

\$37,765,000
TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS
DENTON CREEK REGIONAL
WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM
REVENUE BONDS
SERIES 2011A

TRANSCRIPT OF PROCEEDINGS

**TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL
WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2011A
\$37,765,000**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TWDB Resolutions approving the purchase of bonds	1
Private Placement Memorandum	2
RESOLUTION NO. 1329 AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE, SALE, AND DELIVERY OF TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS AND APPROVING AND AUTHORIZING INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES RELATING THERETO	3
Certificate of General Manager	4
General Certificate	5
Escrow Agreement	6
Signature Identification and Authority Certificate	7
Signature Identification and No-Litigation Certificate	8
Receipt for Proceeds	9
Federal Tax Certificate	10
Closing Certificate	11
Rating Letter	12
Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement	13
Closing Memorandum	14
Attorney General's Opinion and Comptroller's Registration Certificate	15
Opinion of Bond Counsel re Contract Obligations for Additional Bonds	16
Opinion of Bond Counsel	17
Form 8038-G	18

TAB 1

A RESOLUTION OF THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD
APPROVING AN APPLICATION FOR FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE FROM THE CLEAN
WATER STATE REVOLVING FUND THROUGH THE PROPOSED PURCHASE OF
\$23,765,000 TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER
SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS, PROPOSED SERIES 2009

(09-165)

WHEREAS, Trinity River Authority, on behalf of its Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System, (the "TRA") has filed an application for financial assistance in the amount of \$23,765,000 from the Clean Water State Revolving Fund to finance certain wastewater system improvements; and

WHEREAS, TRA seeks financial assistance from the Texas Water Development Board (the "Board") through the Board's proposed purchase of \$23,765,000 Trinity River Authority Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Revenue Bonds, Proposed Series 2009, (the "Obligations"), all as is more specifically set forth in the application and in recommendations of the Board's Project Finance and Construction Assistance staff, to which documents express reference is made; and

WHEREAS, in accordance with §15.607, Water Code, the Board hereby finds:

1. that in its opinion the revenues pledged by TRA will be sufficient to meet all the obligations assumed by the TRA;
2. that the application and financial assistance requested meet the requirements of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, 33 U.S.C. §§1251 *et seq.* (1972), as amended, as well as state law;
3. that the TRA will consider cost-effective, innovative methods of treatment; and
4. that the TRA has adopted and is implementing a water conservation program for the more efficient use of water that will meet reasonably anticipated local needs and conditions and that incorporates practices, techniques or technology prescribed by the Texas Water Code and the Board's rules.

NOW THEREFORE, based on these considerations and findings, the Texas Water Development Board resolves as follows:

A commitment is made by the Board to Trinity River Authority's Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System for financial assistance in the amount of \$23,765,000 from the Clean Water State Revolving Fund, to be evidenced by the Board's proposed purchase of \$23,765,000 Trinity River Authority Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Revenue Bonds, Proposed Series 2009. This commitment will expire on November 30, 2011.

Such commitment is conditioned as follows:

1. this commitment is contingent on a future sale of bonds by the Board or on the availability of funds on hand;
2. this commitment is contingent upon issuance of a written approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas stating that all of the requirements of the laws under which said obligations were issued have been complied with; that said obligations were issued in conformity with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas; and that said obligations are valid and binding obligations of TRA;
3. this commitment is contingent upon TRA's compliance with all applicable requirements contained in the rules and regulations of the Board;
4. TRA's bond counsel must prepare a written opinion that states that the interest on the obligations is excludable from gross income or is exempt from federal income taxation. Bond counsel may rely on covenants and representations of the District when rendering this opinion;
5. TRA's bond counsel must also state in the written opinion that the obligations are not "private activity bonds." Bond counsel may rely on covenants and representations of the District when rendering this opinion;
6. the ordinance/resolution authorizing the issuance of these obligations, (hereinafter referred to as the "*Authorizing Document*"), must include a provision prohibiting TRA from using the proceeds of this loan in a manner that would cause the obligations to become "private activity bonds";
7. the Authorizing Document must include a provision requiring TRA to comply with the provisions of §148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (relating to arbitrage);
8. the Authorizing Document must include a provision requiring TRA to make any required rebate to the United States of arbitrage earnings;
9. the Authorizing Document must include a provision prohibiting TRA from taking any action which would cause the interest on the obligations to be includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes;
10. the Authorizing Document must provide that TRA will not cause or permit the obligations to be treated as "federally guaranteed" obligations within the meaning of §149(b) of the Internal Revenue Code;
11. the bond transcript must include a No Arbitrage Certificate or similar Federal Tax Certificate setting forth TRA's reasonable expectations regarding the use, expenditure and investment of the proceeds of the obligations;

12. the bond transcript must include evidence that the information reporting requirements of §149(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 will be satisfied. This requirement is currently satisfied by filing IRS Form 8038 with the Internal Revenue Service. A completed copy of IRS Form 8038 must be provided to the Executive Administrator of the Board prior to the release of funds;
13. the Authorizing Document must provide that the obligations can be called for early redemption only in inverse order of maturity, and on any date beginning on or after the first interest payment date which is 10 years from the dated date of the obligations, at a redemption price of par, together with accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption;
14. TRA, or an obligated person for whom financial or operating data is presented to the Board in the application for financial assistance either individually or in combination with other issuers of TRA's obligations or obligated persons, will, at a minimum, covenant to comply with requirements for continuing disclosure on an ongoing basis substantially in the manner required by Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") rule 15c2-12 and determined as if the Board were a Participating Underwriter within the meaning of such rule, such continuing disclosure undertaking being for the benefit of the Board and the beneficial owner of TRA's obligations, if the Board sells or otherwise transfers such obligations, and the beneficial owners of the Board's bonds if TRA is an obligated person with respect to such bonds under SEC rule 15c2-12;
15. prior to closing, TRA shall submit documentation evidencing the adoption and implementation of sufficient system rates and charges or, if applicable, the levy of an interest and sinking tax rate sufficient for the repayment of all system debt service requirements;
16. prior to or at closing, TRA shall pay a 1.85% origination fee to the Board calculated pursuant to Board rules;
17. prior to closing, TRA shall adopt and provide an executed copy of a escrow agreement or a trust agreement, the form and substance of which is acceptable to the Executive Administrator, addressing the deposit of bond proceeds into an escrow account or a trust fund;
18. if a bond insurance policy or a surety policy in lieu of a cash reserve are utilized:
 - (a) thirty (30) days before closing, TRA shall submit a draft of the policy to the Board's Executive Administrator for a determination on whether the policy provides appropriate security in accordance with Board policies;
 - (b) prior to closing, TRA shall provide the executed underlying documents of the policy (e.g; commitment letter, specimen policy) in a form and substance that is satisfactory to the Board's Executive Administrator; and
 - (c) prior to closing, the Attorney General of the State of Texas must have considered the use of said policy as a part of its approval of the proposed bond issue.

19. subject to the availability of funds, TRA's debt structure or the timing of its funding needs, the Board's Executive Administrator may request that TRA execute a separate financing agreement in a form and substance acceptable to the Board;
20. loan proceeds shall not be used by TRA when sampling, testing, removing or disposing of contaminated soils and/or media at the project site. The Authorizing Document shall include an environmental indemnification provision wherein TRA agrees to indemnify, hold harmless and protect the Board from any and all claims, causes of action or damages to the person or property of third parties arising from the sampling, analysis, transport, storage, treatment and disposition of any contaminated sewage sludge, contaminated sediments and/or contaminated media that may be generated by TRA, its contractors, consultants, agents, officials and employees as a result of activities relating to the project to the extent permitted by law;
21. TRA may be required to submit outlay reports with sufficient supporting documentation (e.g; invoices, receipts) on a quarterly basis. The Board shall retain the right to request project progress reports and outlay reports monthly as the project proceeds through each project phase;
22. at the Board's option, the Board may fund the financial assistance under this Resolution with either available cash-on-hand or from bond proceeds. If the financial assistance is funded with available cash-on-hand, the Board reserves the right to change the designated source of funds to bond proceeds issued for the purpose of reimbursing funds used to provide the financial assistance approved in this Resolution; and
23. should one or more of the provisions in this resolution be held to be null, void, voidable or, for any reason whatsoever, of no force and effect, such provision(s) shall be construed as severable from the remainder of this resolution and shall not affect the validity of all other provisions of this resolution which shall remain in full force and effect.

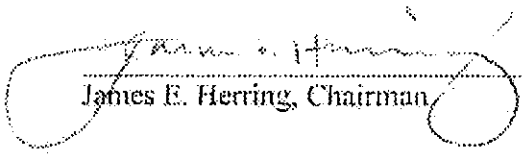
PROVIDED, however, the Authorizing Document is subject to the following special conditions:

24. the loan is approved for funding under the Board's pre-design funding option as specified in 31 TAC §375.39, and initial and future releases of funds are subject to all rules of the Board relating to such funding option;
25. the Authorizing Document contain a provision that stating that the Authority will maintain rates and charges to the Contracting Parties sufficient to meet the debt service requirements on the outstanding obligations of the Authority that are supported by such revenues, and that the Authority will require in its contracts with the Contracting Parties that the Contracting Parties maintain rates and charges for its water and sewer systems sufficient to pay the Contracting Parties obligations secured by and made payable from the revenues derived from the operation of its water and sewer systems;
26. upon request by the Executive Administrator, the Authority shall submit annual audits of Contracting Parties for the Executive Administrator's review; and

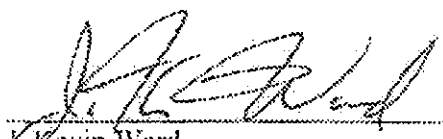
27. if a reserve fund is funded with proceeds from this loan, then that reserve fund shall be used solely for the purpose of retiring the last bond payment, paying principal and interest when and to the extent the amounts in the interest and sinking fund are insufficient to satisfy the debt service requirements, or for purposes otherwise authorized by the Board's Executive Administrator.

APPROVED and ordered of record this, the 19th day of November, 2009.

TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD


James E. Herring, Chairman

ATTEST:


Kevin Ward
Executive Administrator

**A RESOLUTION OF THE TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD
APPROVING AN APPLICATION FOR FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE FROM THE CLEAN
WATER STATE REVOLVING FUND THROUGH THE PROPOSED PURCHASE OF
\$28,035,000 TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER
SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS, PROPOSED SERIES 2011**

(10-90)

WHEREAS, Trinity River Authority, on behalf of its Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System, (the "TRA" or "Authority"), has filed an application for financial assistance in the amount of \$28,035,000 from the Clean Water State Revolving Fund to finance certain wastewater system improvements; and

WHEREAS, TRA seeks financial assistance from the Texas Water Development Board (the "Board") through the Board's proposed purchase of \$28,035,000 Trinity River Authority Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Revenue Bonds, Proposed Series 2011, (the "Obligations"), all as is more specifically set forth in the application and in recommendations of the Board's Project Finance and Construction Assistance staff, to which documents express reference is made; and

WHEREAS, in accordance with §15.607, Water Code, the Board hereby finds:

1. that in its opinion the revenues pledged by TRA will be sufficient to meet all the obligations assumed by the TRA;
2. that the application and financial assistance requested meet the requirements of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, 33 U.S.C. §§1251 *et seq.* (1972), as amended, as well as state law;
3. that the TRA will consider cost-effective, innovative methods of treatment; and
4. that the TRA has adopted and is implementing a water conservation program for the more efficient use of water that will meet reasonably anticipated local needs and conditions and that incorporates practices, techniques or technology prescribed by the Texas Water Code and the Board's rules.

NOW THEREFORE, based on these considerations and findings, the Texas Water Development Board resolves as follows:

A commitment is made by the Board to Trinity River Authority's Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System for financial assistance in the amount of \$28,035,000 from the Clean Water State Revolving Fund, to be evidenced by the Board's proposed purchase of \$28,035,000 Trinity River Authority Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Revenue Bonds, Proposed Series 2011. This commitment will expire on September 30, 2011.

Such commitment is conditioned as follows:

1. this commitment is contingent on a future sale of bonds by the Board or on the availability of funds on hand;
2. this commitment is contingent upon issuance of a written approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas stating that all of the requirements of the laws under which said obligations were issued have been complied with; that said obligations were issued in conformity with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas; and that said obligations are valid and binding obligations of TRA;
3. this commitment is contingent upon TRA's compliance with all applicable requirements contained in the rules and regulations of the Board;
4. TRA's bond counsel must prepare a written opinion that states that the interest on the obligations is excludable from gross income or is exempt from federal income taxation. Bond counsel may rely on covenants and representations of the District when rendering this opinion;
5. TRA's bond counsel must also state in the written opinion that the obligations are not "private activity bonds." Bond counsel may rely on covenants and representations of the District when rendering this opinion;
6. the ordinance/resolution authorizing the issuance of these obligations, (hereinafter referred to as the "*Authorizing Document*"), must include a provision prohibiting TRA from using the proceeds of this loan in a manner that would cause the obligations to become "private activity bonds";
7. the Authorizing Document must include a provision requiring TRA to comply with the provisions of §148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (relating to arbitrage);
8. the Authorizing Document must include a provision requiring TRA to make any required rebate to the United States of arbitrage earnings;
9. the Authorizing Document must include a provision prohibiting TRA from taking any action which would cause the interest on the obligations to be includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes;
10. the Authorizing Document must provide that TRA will not cause or permit the obligations to be treated as "federally guaranteed" obligations within the meaning of §149(b) of the Internal Revenue Code;
11. the bond transcript must include a No Arbitrage Certificate or similar Federal Tax Certificate setting forth TRA's reasonable expectations regarding the use, expenditure and investment of the proceeds of the obligations;

12. the bond transcript must include evidence that the information reporting requirements of §149(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 will be satisfied. This requirement is currently satisfied by filing IRS Form 8038 with the Internal Revenue Service. A completed copy of IRS Form 8038 must be provided to the Executive Administrator of the Board prior to the release of funds;
13. the Authorizing Document must provide that the obligations can be called for early redemption only in inverse order of maturity, and on any date beginning on or after the first interest payment date which is 10 years from the dated date of the obligations, at a redemption price of par, together with accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption;
14. TRA, or an obligated person for whom financial or operating data is presented to the Board in the application for financial assistance either individually or in combination with other issuers of TRA's obligations or obligated persons, will, at a minimum, covenant to comply with requirements for continuing disclosure on an ongoing basis substantially in the manner required by Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") rule 15c2-12 and determined as if the Board were a Participating Underwriter within the meaning of such rule, such continuing disclosure undertaking being for the benefit of the Board and the beneficial owner of TRA's obligations, if the Board sells or otherwise transfers such obligations, and the beneficial owners of the Board's bonds if TRA is an obligated person with respect to such bonds under SEC rule 15c2-12;
15. prior to closing, TRA shall submit documentation evidencing the adoption and implementation of sufficient system rates and charges or, if applicable, the levy of an interest and sinking tax rate sufficient for the repayment of all system debt service requirements;
16. prior to or at closing, TRA shall pay a 1.85% origination fee to the Board calculated pursuant to Board rules;
17. prior to closing, TRA shall adopt and provide an executed copy of a escrow agreement or a trust agreement, the form and substance of which is acceptable to the Executive Administrator, addressing the deposit of bond proceeds into an escrow account or a trust fund;
18. if a bond insurance policy or a surety policy in lieu of a cash reserve are utilized:
 - (a) thirty (30) days before closing, TRA shall submit a draft of the policy to the Board's Executive Administrator for a determination on whether the policy provides appropriate security in accordance with Board policies;
 - (b) prior to closing, TRA shall provide the executed underlying documents of the policy (e.g.; commitment letter, specimen policy) in a form and substance that is satisfactory to the Board's Executive Administrator; and
 - (c) prior to closing, the Attorney General of the State of Texas must have considered the use of said policy as a part of its approval of the proposed bond issue.

19. subject to the availability of funds, TRA's debt structure or the timing of its funding needs, the Board's Executive Administrator may request that TRA execute a separate financing agreement in a form and substance acceptable to the Board;
20. all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors and subcontractors for projects shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on projects of a similar character in the locality in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, and the U.S. Department of Labor's implementing regulations. The recipient, all contractors, and all sub-contractors shall ensure that all project contracts mandate compliance with Davis-Bacon;
21. fees to be reimbursed under any consulting contract must be reasonable to the services performed and must be reflected in a contract acceptable to the Executive Administrator;
22. loan proceeds shall not be used by TRA when sampling, testing, removing or disposing of contaminated soils and/or media at the project site. The Authorizing Document shall include an environmental indemnification provision wherein TRA agrees to indemnify, hold harmless and protect the Board from any and all claims, causes of action or damages to the person or property of third parties arising from the sampling, analysis, transport, storage, treatment and disposition of any contaminated sewage sludge, contaminated sediments and/or contaminated media that may be generated by TRA, its contractors, consultants, agents, officials and employees as a result of activities relating to the project to the extent permitted by law;
23. TRA shall submit outlay reports with sufficient supporting documentation (e.g.; invoices, receipts) on at least a quarterly basis. The Board shall retain the right to request project progress reports and outlay reports monthly as the project proceeds through each project phase;
24. at the Board's option, the Board may fund the financial assistance under this Resolution with either available cash-on-hand or from bond proceeds. If the financial assistance is funded with available cash-on-hand, the Board reserves the right to change the designated source of funds to bond proceeds issued for the purpose of reimbursing funds used to provide the financial assistance approved in this Resolution; and
25. should one or more of the provisions in this resolution be held to be null, void, voidable or, for any reason whatsoever, of no force and effect, such provision(s) shall be construed as severable from the remainder of this resolution and shall not affect the validity of all other provisions of this resolution which shall remain in full force and effect.

PROVIDED, however, the Authorizing Document is subject to the following special conditions:

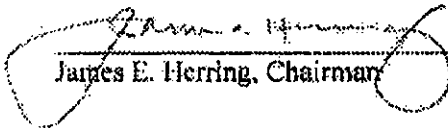
26. the loan is approved for funding under the Board's pre-design funding option as specified in 31 TAC §375.14, and initial and future releases of funds are subject to all rules of the Board relating to such funding option;
27. the Authorizing Document contain a provision that stating that the Authority will maintain

rates and charges to the Contracting Parties sufficient to meet the debt service requirements on the outstanding obligations of the Authority that are supported by such revenues, and that the Authority will require in its contracts with the Contracting Parties that the Contracting Parties maintain rates and charges for its water and sewer systems sufficient to pay the Contracting Parties obligations secured by and made payable from the revenues derived from the operation of its water and sewer systems;

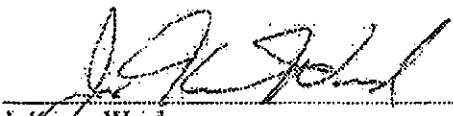
28. upon request by the Executive Administrator, the Authority shall submit annual audits of Contracting Parties for the Executive Administrator's review; and
29. if a reserve fund is funded with proceeds from this loan, then that reserve fund shall be used solely for the purpose of retiring the last bond payment, paying principal and interest when and to the extent the amounts in the interest and sinking fund are insufficient to satisfy the debt service requirements, or for purposes otherwise authorized by the Board's Executive Administrator.

APPROVED and ordered of record this, the 23rd day of September, 2010.

TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD


James E. Herring, Chairman

ATTEST:


J. Kevin Ward
Executive Administrator

TAB 2

PRIVATE PLACEMENT MEMORANDUM DATED AUGUST 25, 2011

NEW ISSUE BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY

On the date of initial delivery of the Obligations (defined below), Issuer Bond Counsel (defined on page 2) will render its opinion substantially in the form attached in APPENDIX C - FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL.

\$37,765,000

**TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS
DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS
SERIES 2011A (the "Obligations")**

Dated: September 15, 2011

Due: February 1

Interest Date:	Interest on the Obligations will be payable on February 1 and August 1 each year, commencing February 1, 2012 (each an "Interest Payment Date"). The Obligations will bear interest at the rates per annum set forth in "APPENDIX A - MATURITY SCHEDULE."
Record Date:	The close of business on the fifteenth calendar day of the calendar month immediately preceding the applicable Interest Payment Date.
Date Interest Accrues:	Each Bond shall bear interest from the Delivery Date thereof or the most recent Interest Payment Date to which interest has been paid or provided for at the rate set forth, such interest payable semiannually on February 1 and August 1 of each year until the earliest of maturity or prior redemption, commencing on the February 1, or August 1, immediately following the Delivery Date.
Redemption:	The Obligations are subject to redemption prior to maturity as provided herein. See "THE OBLIGATIONS - Redemption Provisions" herein.
Authorized Denominations:	The Obligations are being issued as fully registered bonds in denominations of \$5,000, or any integral multiple thereof.
Paying Agent/Registrar/Registrar:	The paying agent ("Paying Agent/Registrar/Registrar") for the Obligations is The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association.
Book-Entry-Only System	Upon initial issuance, the ownership of the Obligations will be registered in the registration books of the Issuer kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC") to which principal, redemption premium, if any, and interest payments on the Obligations will be made. The purchasers of the Obligations will not receive physical delivery of bond certificates. Principal of, interest, and premium if any, on the Obligations will be payable at the designated office of the Paying Agent/Registrar in Dallas, Texas as the same become due and payable.
Issuer:	Trinity River Authority of Texas.
Official Action:	Bond resolution adopted on August 24, 2011 and the related Certificate of General Manager dated August 25, 2011.
Purpose:	See "APPENDIX B - OFFICIAL ACTION."
Security for the Obligations:	See APPENDIX B - OFFICIAL ACTION."
Ratings:	See "OTHER INFORMATION - Ratings"
Delivery Date:	October 6, 2011.

See "APPENDIX A - MATURITY SCHEDULE" for Principal Amounts, Maturities, Interest Rates, Prices or Yields, and Initial CUSIP Numbers

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

Linda D. Timmerman, Ed.D., President
Harold L. Barnard, Vice President
Howard S. Slobodin, Secretary
Patricia Carlson
William W. Collins, Jr.
Christina Melton Crain
Michael Cronin
Steve Cronin
Amanda Davis
Ronald Goldman
Martha A. Hernandez
John W. Jenkins
Keith W. Kidd

Jess A. Laird
Nancy E. Lavinski
David B. Leonard
Andrew Martinez
Kevin Maxwell
Dennis "Joe" McCleskey
James W. Neale
Manny Rachal
Amir Rupani
Ana Laura Saucedo
Shirley K. Seale
J. Carol Spillars
Kim C. Wyatt

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton, L.L.P., Bond Counsel

First Southwest Company, Financial Advisor

The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Paying Agent/Registrar

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
INTRODUCTION	1
THE OBLIGATIONS	1
General Description	1
Purpose	1
Authority for Issuance	1
Security for the Obligations	1
Redemption Provisions	1
Notice of Redemption; Selection of Obligations to Be Redeemed	2
Book-Entry-Only System	2
Estimated Draw Schedule	2
TAX MATTERS	3
Opinion	3
OTHER INFORMATION	3
Forward Looking Statements	3
Ratings	3
LITIGATION	3
General	3
The Issuer	3
CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION	3
Compliance with Prior Undertakings	3
MISCELLANEOUS	4
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	4
 APPENDIX A MATURITY SCHEDULE	
APPENDIX B FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION	
APPENDIX C FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL	
APPENDIX D DRAW SCHEDULE	

**Private Placement Memorandum
relating to**

\$37,765,000

**TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS
DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS
SERIES 2011A (the "Obligations")**

INTRODUCTION

This Private Placement Memorandum, including the cover page and appendices, contains brief descriptions of the Issuer, provides certain information with respect to the issuance by the Issuer, and summaries of certain provisions of the "Obligations" pursuant to the Official Action. Except as otherwise set forth herein, capitalized terms used but not defined in this Private Placement Memorandum have the meanings assigned to them in the Official Action. See "APPENDIX B – "FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION" attached hereto.

APPENDIX A contains the maturity schedule for the Obligations. APPENDIX B contains the Official Action and a description of the purpose for the proceeds of the Obligations. APPENDIX C contains a copy of the proposed opinion of Bond Counsel with respect to the Obligations. The summaries of the documents contained in the forepart of this Private Placement Memorandum are not complete or definitive, and every statement made in this Private Placement Memorandum concerning any provision of any document is qualified by reference to such document in its entirety.

THE OBLIGATIONS

General Description

The Obligations are being issued in the aggregate principal amount set forth in APPENDIX A of this Private Placement Memorandum and will mature and be subject to redemption prior to maturity as described therein. The Obligations are being issued as fully registered bonds in denominations of \$5,000, or any integral multiple thereof. The Obligations will be dated as of the stated date of issue and will mature on the dates referenced thereon, and will bear interest at the rates per annum set forth in "APPENDIX A - MATURITY SCHEDULE."

Interest on the Obligations is payable semiannually on each Interest Payment Date, and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months. Principal of and the redemption price with respect to the Obligations will be payable to the Owners upon presentation and surrender at the principal office of the Paying Agent/Registrar.

Purpose

See "APPENDIX B - FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION."

Authority for Issuance

The Obligations are issued pursuant to Chapter 518, Acts of the 54th Texas Legislature, Regular Session, 1955, as amended, which created and empowers the Issuer, Chapter 30, Texas Water Code and other applicable laws, as amended, and the Official Action adopted by the Issuer.

Security for the Obligations

See "APPENDIX B - FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION."

Redemption Provisions

On February 1, 2022, or on any date thereafter, the Obligations maturing on and after February 1, 2023 may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, upon the written direction of the Issuer, with funds provided by the Issuer, at par plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption as a whole, or in part in inverse order of maturity, and if less than all of a maturity is to be redeemed the Paying Agent/Registrar will determine by lot the

Obligations, or portions thereof within such maturity to be redeemed (provided that a portion of a Bond may be redeemed only in Authorized Denominations).

Notice of Redemption; Selection of Obligations to Be Redeemed

See "APPENDIX B - FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION."

The Paying Agent/Registrar, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption of the Bonds, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the Issuer will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC.

Book-Entry-Only System

The information in this caption concerning The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC") and DTC's book entry system has been obtained from DTC and the Issuer makes no representation or warranty nor takes any responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York, will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a Standard & Poor's rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at www.dtcc.com.

Estimated Draw Schedule

See "APPENDIX D – DRAW SCHEDULE."

TAX MATTERS

Opinion

Bond Counsel will deliver its opinion on the date of delivery of the Obligations substantially in the form as attached in "APPENDIX C - FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL."

OTHER INFORMATION

Forward Looking Statements

The statements contained in this Private Placement Memorandum, including the cover page, appendices, and any other information or documents provided by the Issuer, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the Issuer's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Holders and beneficial owners of the Obligations have placed reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward looking statements included in this Private Placement Memorandum are based on information available to the Issuer on the date hereof. It is important to note that the Issuer's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

Ratings

The bonds are rated "AA" by Standard & Poor's, a Division of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. An explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained from the company furnishing the rating. The ratings reflect only the respective views of such organizations and the Issuer makes no representation as to the appropriateness of the ratings. There is no assurance that such ratings will continue for any given period of time or that they will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by any or all of such rating companies, if in the judgment of any or all companies, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such ratings, or either of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Obligations.

LITIGATION

General

On the date of delivery of the Obligations to the initial purchasers thereof, the Issuer will execute and deliver a certificate to the effect that, except as disclosed herein, no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of that date, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Obligations or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner questioning the validity of the Obligations.

The Issuer

There is no litigation, proceeding, inquiry, or investigation pending by or before any court or other governmental authority or entity (or, to the best knowledge of the Issuer, threatened) that adversely affects the power, authority or obligation of the Issuer to deliver the Obligations, the security for, or the validity of, the Obligations or the financial condition of the Issuer.

CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

In the Official Action, the Issuer has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Obligations. The Issuer is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Obligations. Under the agreement, the Issuer and the Contracting Parties (as defined in the Official Action) will be obligated to provide timely notice of specified material events and the Contracting Parties will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data, to certain other information vendors. SEE APPENDIX B - "FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION."

Compliance with Prior Undertakings

During the last five years, the Issuer has complied in all material respects with its continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with the Rule.

MISCELLANEOUS

Any statements made in this Private Placement Memorandum involving matters of opinion or of estimates, whether or not so expressly stated, are set forth as such and not as representations of fact, and no representation is made that any of the estimates will be realized. Neither this Private Placement Memorandum nor any statement that may have been made verbally or in writing is to be construed as a contract with the owners of the Obligations.

The information contained above is neither guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness nor to be construed as a representation by the Issuer. The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice and neither the delivery of this Private Placement Memorandum nor any sale made hereunder is to create, under any circumstances, any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the Issuer or the Issuer from the date hereof.

The Private Placement Memorandum is submitted in connection with the sale of the securities referred to herein and may not be reproduced or used, as a whole or in part, for any other purpose.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

The Private Placement Memorandum speaks only as of its date and the information contained herein is subject to change. Descriptions of the Obligations and the Official Action and any other agreements and documents contained herein constitute summaries of certain provisions thereof and do not purport to be complete. This Private Placement Memorandum was approved by the Issuer.



J. Kevin Ward, General Manager
Trinity River Authority of Texas

APPENDIX A
MATURITY SCHEDULE
CUSIP Prefix 896564

MATURITY DATE <u>(February 1)</u>	PRINCIPAL <u>AMOUNT(\$)</u>	INTEREST <u>RATE(%)</u>	INITIAL <u>YIELD(%)</u>	CUSIP <u>Suffix</u>
2014	290,000	0.000	0.000	RR4
2015	305,000	0.300	0.300	RS2
2016	1,195,000	0.550	0.550	RT0
2017	1,235,000	0.850	0.850	RU7
2018	1,280,000	1.200	1.200	RV5
2019	1,330,000	1.450	1.450	RW3
2020	1,385,000	1.700	1.700	RX1
2021	1,445,000	1.950	1.950	RY9
2022	1,510,000	2.100	2.100	RZ6
2023	1,575,000	2.300	2.300	SA0
2024	1,650,000	2.450	2.450	SB8
2025	1,735,000	2.600	2.600	SC6
2026	1,815,000	2.700	2.700	SD4
2027	1,905,000	2.800	2.800	SE2
2028	2,005,000	2.950	2.950	SF9
2029	2,815,000	3.050	3.050	SG7
2030	2,935,000	3.150	3.150	SH5
2031	3,065,000	3.200	3.200	SJ1
2032	3,200,000	3.250	3.250	SK8
2033	745,000	3.350	3.350	SL6
2034	785,000	3.400	3.400	SM4
2035	825,000	3.500	3.500	SN2
2036	865,000	3.550	3.550	SP7
2037	910,000	3.550	3.550	SQ5
2038	960,000	3.550	3.550	SR3

APPENDIX B
FORM OF OFFICIAL ACTION

BOND RESOLUTION

RESOLUTION NO. R-1329

RESOLUTION AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE, SALE, AND DELIVERY OF TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS AND APPROVING AND AUTHORIZING INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES RELATING THERETO

THE STATE OF TEXAS :
TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS :

WHEREAS, Trinity River Authority of Texas, is an agency and political subdivision of the State of Texas, being a conservation and reclamation district created and functioning under Article 16, Section 59, of the Texas Constitution, pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 518, Acts of the 54th Legislature, Regular Session, 1955, as amended (the "Authority Act"); and

WHEREAS, a "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract" (the "Base Contract"), dated as of October 28, 1987, has been duly executed between Trinity River Authority of Texas (hereinafter called the "Issuer" or the "Authority") and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, and Roanoke, Texas, with respect to the acquisition and construction by the Issuer, for the benefit of said cities, of a Denton Creek regional wastewater treatment "System", as described and defined in the Base Contract; and

WHEREAS, as permitted by the Base Contract, and each subsequent supplemental contract, the Issuer has entered into the following supplemental contracts:

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Supplemental Contract (City of Southlake and Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1)" (the "First Supplemental Contract"), dated as of April 27, 1988;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Second Supplemental Contract (City of Keller, Texas)" (the "Second Supplemental Contract"), dated as of April 22, 1992;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Third Supplemental Contract (Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3)" (the "Third Supplemental Contract"), dated as of August 24, 1994;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fourth Supplemental Contract (Town of Flower Mound, Texas)" (the "Fourth Supplemental Contract"), dated as of March 1, 2000;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fifth Supplemental Contract (Town of Westlake, Texas)" (the "Fifth Supplemental Contract"), dated as of March 1, 2000;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Northlake, Texas)" (the "Sixth Supplemental Contract"), dated as of December 1, 2001;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Seventh Supplemental Contract (Town of Argyle, Texas)", dated as of December 6, 2006 and amended as of December 5, 2007 (the "Seventh Supplemental Contract"); and

WHEREAS, the Base Contract and the First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth and Seventh Supplemental Contracts are hereby referred to and adopted for all purposes, the same as if they had been set forth in their entirety in this Resolution; and

WHEREAS, as permitted by said contracts the Issuer has duly issued the following series of bonds:

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 1988 (the "Series 1988 Bonds"), which issue is no longer outstanding;

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 1993 (the "Series 1993 Bonds"), which issue is no longer outstanding;

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 1996 (the "Series 1996 Bonds"), which issue is no longer outstanding;

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2000 (the "Series 2000 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement and Refunding Bonds, Series 2003 (the "Series 2003 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement Bonds, Series 2006 (the "Series 2006 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement Bonds, Series 2007 (the "Series 2007 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2008 (the "Series 2008 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2009 (the "Series 2009 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011 (the "Series 2011 Bonds"); and

WHEREAS, the Issuer is adopting at the same meeting at which this Resolution is adopted, a resolution authorizing the issuance its Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2011 (the "Series 2011 Refunding Bonds") on a parity with the aforementioned bonds and the proposed Bonds, for the purpose of obtaining funds to refund certain maturities of the Series 2000 Bonds and Series 2003 Bonds; and

WHEREAS, the resolutions of the Issuer authorizing the issuance of the Series 2000 Bonds, the Series 2003 Bonds, the Series 2006 Bonds, the Series 2007 Bonds, the Series 2008 Bonds, the Series 2009 Bonds, the Series 2011 Bonds and the Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) provide for the issuance of additional parity revenue bonds for the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the System; and

WHEREAS, the Issuer has determined to issue the bonds (the "Bonds") hereinafter authorized on a parity with the Series 2000 Bonds, Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) to be outstanding after the delivery of the Bonds to obtain funds to acquire and construct improvements and extensions to the System; and

WHEREAS, the Bonds authorized to be issued by this resolution (the "Bond Resolution" or "Resolution") are to be issued and delivered pursuant to the Authority Act, Chapter 30, Texas Water Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, and other applicable laws; and

WHEREAS, the Base Contract and the First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth and Seventh Supplemental Contracts authorize the Issuer to issue the Bonds in the manner and amount and with the security, as hereinafter provided.

THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS, THAT:

Section 1. RECITALS, AMOUNT AND PURPOSE OF THE BONDS. The Board of Directors hereby incorporates the recitals set forth in the preamble hereto as if set forth in full at this place and further finds and determines that said recitals are true and correct. In order to obtain funds to pay for the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System, the Board of Directors hereby authorizes and directs the issuance of revenue bonds of the Issuer, in one or more series, in the aggregate principal amount of not to exceed \$51,800,000.

Section 2. DESIGNATION, DATE, DENOMINATIONS, NUMBERS, MATURITIES AND SALE OF BONDS. (a) Each bond issued pursuant to this Resolution shall, subject to paragraph (b) of this section, be designated: "TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BOND, SERIES ____."

(b) As authorized by Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, the General Manager of the Issuer is hereby designated as the "Authorized Officer" of the Issuer, and is hereby authorized, appointed, and designated as the officer or employee of the Issuer authorized to act on behalf of the Issuer in the selling and delivering of the Bonds and carrying out the other procedures specified in this Resolution, including the use of a book-entry-only system with respect to the Bonds and the execution of an appropriate letter of representations if deemed appropriate, the determining and fixing of the date of the Bonds, any additional or different designation or title by which the Bonds shall be known, the price at which the Bonds will be sold, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the amount of each maturity of principal thereof, the due date of each such maturity (not exceeding forty years from the date of the Bonds), the rate of interest to be borne by each such maturity, the interest payment dates and periods, the dates, price and terms upon and at which the Bonds shall be subject to redemption prior to due date or maturity at the option of the Issuer, any mandatory sinking fund redemption provisions, procuring municipal bond insurance, and approving modifications to this Resolution and executing such instruments, documents and agreements as may be necessary with respect thereto, if it is determined that such insurance would be financially desirable and

advantageous, and all other matters relating to the issuance, sale and delivery of the Bonds. The Authorized Officer, acting for and on behalf of the Issuer, is authorized to arrange for the Bonds to be sold, in one or more issues, at negotiated sale to the Texas Water Development Board, at such price, in an amount not to exceed the aggregate principal amount set forth above, with such maturities of principal, with such interest rates, and with such optional and mandatory sinking fund redemption provisions, if any, and other matters, as shall be mutually acceptable. The Bonds shall not be sold at a price less than 95% of the initial aggregate principal amount thereof plus accrued interest thereon from their date to their delivery, and no Bond shall bear interest at a rate greater than 10% per annum. The Authorized Officer is further authorized, for and on behalf of the Issuer, to approve any notice of sale, bidding forms, official statement, and any supplements thereto relating to the Bonds and referred to in any such certification. It is further provided, however, that, notwithstanding the foregoing provisions, the Bonds shall not be delivered unless, prior to their delivery, the Bonds have been rated by a nationally recognized rating agency for municipal long term obligations, as required by said Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended.

Section 3. CHARACTERISTICS OF THE BONDS. Registration, Transfer, Conversion and Exchange; Authentication.

(a) The Issuer shall keep or cause to be kept at the principal corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") books or records for the registration of the transfer, conversion and exchange of the Bonds (the "Registration Books"), and the Issuer hereby appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar as its registrar and transfer agent to keep such books or records and make such registrations of transfers, conversions and exchanges under such reasonable regulations as the Issuer and Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe; and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall make such registrations, transfers, conversions and exchanges as herein provided. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall obtain and record in the Registration Books the address of the registered owner of each Bond to which payments with respect to the Bonds shall be mailed, as herein provided; but it shall be the duty of each registered owner to notify the Paying Agent/Registrar in writing of the address to which payments shall be mailed, and such interest payments shall not be mailed unless such notice has been given. The Issuer shall have the right to inspect the Registration Books during regular business hours of the Paying Agent/Registrar, but otherwise the Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep the Registration Books confidential and, unless otherwise required by law, shall not permit their inspection by any other entity. The Issuer shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's standard or customary fees and charges for making such registration, transfer, conversion, exchange and delivery of a substitute Bond or Bonds. Registration of assignments, transfers, conversions and exchanges of Bonds shall be made in the manner provided and with the effect stated in the FORM OF BOND set forth in this Resolution. Each substitute Bond shall bear a letter and/or number to distinguish it from each other Bond.

Except as provided in Section 3(c) hereof, an authorized representative of the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, before the delivery of any such Bond, date and manually sign said Bond, and no such Bond shall be deemed to be issued or outstanding unless such Bond is so executed. The Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall cancel all paid Bonds and Bonds surrendered for conversion and exchange. No additional ordinances, orders, or resolutions need be passed or adopted by the governing body of the Issuer or any other body or person so as to accomplish the foregoing conversion and exchange of any Bond or portion thereof, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall provide for the printing, execution, and delivery of the substitute Bonds in the manner prescribed herein, and said Bonds shall be of type composition printed on paper with lithographed or steel engraved borders of customary weight and strength. Pursuant to Subchapter D, Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code, the duty of conversion and exchange of Bonds as aforesaid is hereby imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar, and, upon the execution of said Certificate, the converted and exchanged Bond shall be valid, incontestable, and enforceable in the same manner and with the same effect as the Bonds which initially were issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, approved by the Attorney General, and registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts.

(b) Payment of Bonds and Interest. The Issuer hereby further appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar to act as the paying agent for paying the principal of and interest on the Bonds, all as provided in this Resolution. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep proper records of all payments made by the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Bonds, and of all conversions and exchanges of Bonds, and all replacements of Bonds, as provided in this Resolution. However, in the event of a nonpayment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for thirty (30) days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Issuer. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five (5) business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner appearing on the Registration Books at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

(c) In General. The Bonds (i) shall be issued in fully registered form, without interest coupons, with the principal of and interest on such Bonds to be payable only to the registered owners thereof, (ii) may or shall be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities (notice of which shall be given to the Paying Agent/Registrar by the Issuer at least 50 days prior to any such redemption date), (iii) transferred and assigned, (iv) may be converted and exchanged for other Bonds, (v) shall have the characteristics, (vi) shall be signed, sealed, executed and authenticated, (vii) the principal of and interest on the Bonds shall be payable, and (viii) shall be administered and the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Issuer shall have certain duties and responsibilities with respect to the Bonds, all as provided, and in the manner and to the effect as required or indicated, in the FORM OF BOND set forth in this Resolution. The Bonds initially issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution are not required to be, and shall not be, authenticated by the Paying Agent/Registrar, but on each substitute Bond issued in conversion of and exchange for any Bond or Bonds issued under this Resolution the Paying Agent/Registrar shall execute the PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE, in the form set forth in the FORM OF BOND.

(d) Substitute Paying Agent/Registrar. The Issuer covenants with the registered owners of the Bonds that at all times while the Bonds are outstanding the Issuer will provide a competent and legally qualified bank, trust company, financial institution, or other agency to act as and perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds under this Resolution, and that the Paying Agent/Registrar will be one entity. The Issuer reserves the right to, and may, at its option, change the Paying Agent/Registrar upon not less than 120 days written notice to the Paying Agent/Registrar, to be effective not later than 60 days prior to the next principal or interest payment date after such notice. In the event that the entity at any time acting as Paying Agent/Registrar (or its successor by merger, acquisition, or other method) should resign or otherwise cease to act as such, the Issuer covenants that promptly it will appoint a competent and legally qualified bank, trust company, financial institution, or other agency to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Resolution. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the previous Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall transfer and deliver the Registration Books (or a copy thereof), along with all other pertinent books and records relating to the Bonds, to the new Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Issuer. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Issuer promptly will cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar to each registered owner of the Bonds, by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, which notice also shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar. By accepting the position and performing as such, each Paying Agent/Registrar shall be deemed to have agreed to the provisions of this Resolution, and a certified copy of this Resolution shall be delivered to each Paying Agent/Registrar.

(e) Book-Entry Only System. The Bonds issued in exchange for the Bonds initially issued to the purchaser specified herein shall be initially issued in the form of a separate single fully registered Bond for each of the maturities thereof. Upon initial issuance, the ownership of each such Bond shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company of New York ("DTC"), and except as provided in subsection (f) hereof, all of the outstanding Bonds shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC.

With respect to Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation to any securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations on whose behalf DTC was created ("DTC Participant") to hold securities to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among DTC Participants or to any person on behalf of whom such a DTC Participant holds an interest in the Bonds. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co. or any DTC Participant with respect to any ownership interest in the Bonds, (ii) the delivery to any DTC Participant or any other person, other than a registered owner of Bonds, as shown on the Registration Books, of any notice with respect to the Bonds, or (iii) the payment to any DTC Participant or any other person, other than a registered owner of Bonds, as shown in the Registration Books of any amount with respect to principal of or interest on the Bonds. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be entitled to treat and consider the person in whose name each Bond is registered in the Registration Books as the absolute owner of such Bond for the purpose of payment of principal and interest with respect to such Bond, for the purpose of registering transfers with respect to such Bond, and for all other purposes whatsoever. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall pay all principal of and interest on the Bonds only to or upon the order of the registered owners, as shown in the Registration Books as provided in this Resolution, or their respective attorneys duly authorized in writing, and all such payments shall be valid and effective to fully satisfy and discharge the Issuer's obligations with respect to payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to the extent of the sum or sums so paid. No person other than a registered owner, as shown in the Registration Books, shall receive a Bond certificate evidencing the obligation of the Issuer to make payments of principal and interest pursuant to this Resolution. Upon delivery by DTC to the Paying Agent/Registrar of written notice to the effect that DTC has determined to substitute a new nominee in place of Cede & Co., and subject to the provisions in this Resolution with respect to interest checks being mailed to the registered owner at the close of business on the Record date, the words "Cede & Co." in this Resolution shall refer to such new nominee of DTC.

(f) Successor Securities Depository; Transfers Outside Book-Entry Only System. In the event that the Issuer determines that DTC is incapable of discharging its responsibilities described herein and in the representation letter of the Issuer to DTC or that it is in the best interest of the beneficial owners of the Bonds that they be able to obtain certificated Bonds, the Issuer shall (i) appoint a successor securities depository, qualified to act as such under Section 17A of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, notify DTC and DTC Participants of the appointment of such successor securities depository and transfer one or more separate Bonds to such successor securities depository or (ii) notify DTC and DTC Participants of the availability through DTC of Bonds and transfer one or more separate Bonds to DTC Participants having Bonds credited to their DTC accounts. In such event, the Bonds shall no longer be restricted to being registered in the Registration Books in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, but may be registered in the name of the successor securities depository, or its nominee, or in whatever name or names registered owners transferring or exchanging Bonds shall designate, in accordance with the provisions of this Resolution.

(g) Payments to Cede & Co. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, so long as any Bond is registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, all

payments with respect to principal of and interest on such Bond and all notices with respect to such Bond shall be made and given, respectively, in the manner provided in the representation letter of the Issuer to DTC.

(h) Notice of Redemption. (i) In addition to the notice of redemption set forth in the FORM OF BOND, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice of redemption of the Bonds by first class mail, postage prepaid at least thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date to each registered securities depository and to any national information service that disseminates redemption notices. In addition, in the event of a redemption caused by an advance refunding of the Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall send a second notice of redemption to the persons specified in the immediately preceding sentence at least thirty (30) days but not more than ninety (90) days prior to the actual redemption date. Any notice sent to the registered securities depositories or such national information services shall be sent so that they are received at least two (2) days prior to the general mailing or publication date of such notice. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall also send a notice of prepayment or redemption to the Registered Owner of any Bond who has not sent the Bonds in for redemption sixty (60) days after the redemption date.

(ii) Each notice of redemption given by the Paying Agent/Registrar, whether required in the FORM OF BOND or in this Section, shall contain a description of the Bonds to be redeemed including the complete name of the Bonds, the Series, the date of issue, the interest rate, the maturity date, the CUSIP number, the certificate numbers, the amounts called of each certificate, the publications and mailing date for the notice, the date of redemption, the redemption price, the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar and the address at which the Bonds may be redeemed, including a contact person and telephone number.

(iii) All redemption payments made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the Registered Owners shall include a CUSIP number relating to each amount paid to such Registered Owner.

Section 4. FORM OF BONDS. The form of the Bonds, including the form of Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate, the form of Assignment and the form of Registration Certificate of the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas to be attached to the Bonds initially issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, shall be, respectively, substantially as follows, with such appropriate variations, omissions, or insertions as are permitted or required by this Resolution.

FORM OF BOND

NO. R-	UNITED STATES OF AMERICA	PRINCIPAL
	STATE OF TEXAS	AMOUNT
	TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS	\$ _____
	DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM	
	REVENUE BOND, SERIES _____	

<u>INTEREST RATE</u>	<u>DATE OF BONDS</u>	<u>MATURITY DATE</u>	<u>CUSIP NO.</u>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	------------------

REGISTERED OWNER:

PRINCIPAL AMOUNT:

DOLLARS

ON THE MATURITY DATE specified above, the TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS (the "Issuer"), being a governmental agency, and body corporate and politic of the State of Texas, hereby promises to pay to the Registered Owner set forth above, or registered assigns (hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount set forth above, and to pay interest thereon from the Date of Bonds as set forth above, on _____ 1, _____ and semiannually thereafter on each _____ 1 and _____ 1 to the maturity date specified above, or the date of redemption prior to maturity, at the interest rate per annum specified above, calculated on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months; except that if this Bond is required to be authenticated and the date of its authentication is later than the first Record Date (hereinafter defined), such principal amount shall bear interest from the interest payment date next preceding the date of authentication, unless such date of authentication is after any Record Date but on or before the next following interest payment date, in which case such principal amount shall bear interest from such next following interest payment date; provided, however, that if on the date of authentication hereof the interest on the Bond or Bonds, if any, for which this Bond is being exchanged or converted from is due but has not been paid, then this Bond shall bear interest from the date to which such interest has been paid in full.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption prior to maturity, at the principal corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Dallas, Texas, which is the "Paying Agent/Registrar" for this Bond. The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof on each interest payment date by check or draft, dated as of such interest payment date, drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Issuer required by the Resolution authorizing the issuance of this Bond (the "Bond Resolution") to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check or draft shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner hereof, at its address as it appeared on the fifteenth calendar day of the month next preceding each such date (the "Record Date") on the Registration Books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described; provided, however, that for so long as the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB") is the registered owner of the Bonds, all payments of principal and interest will be made in wire transfer form at no cost to the TWDB. In addition, interest may be paid by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Authority. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each owner of a Bond appearing on the Registration Books at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

ANY ACCRUED INTEREST due at maturity or upon the redemption of this Bond prior to maturity as provided herein shall be paid to the registered owner upon presentation and surrender of this Bond for redemption and payment at the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Issuer covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that on or before each principal payment date, interest payment date, and accrued interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar, from the "Interest and Redemption Fund" created by the

Bond Resolution, the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Bonds, when due.

IF THE DATE for the payment of the principal of or interest on this Bond shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

THIS BOND is one of a Series of Bonds dated _____, authorized in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas in the principal amount of \$_____, IN ORDER TO OBTAIN FUNDS TO PAY THE COSTS OF THE ACQUISITION AND CONSTRUCTION OF IMPROVEMENTS AND EXTENSIONS TO THE DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM.

ON _____, _____, or on any date thereafter, the Bonds of this Series may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, at the option of the Authority, with funds derived from any available and lawful source, as a whole, or in part in inverse order of maturity, and, if in part, the particular Bonds to be redeemed shall be selected and designated by the Authority, at the redemption price of the principal amount, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

AT LEAST 30 days prior to the date fixed for any redemption of Bonds or portions thereof prior to maturity a written notice of such redemption shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the registered owner of each Bond to be redeemed at its address as it appeared on the day such notice of redemption is mailed and to major securities depositories, national bond rating agencies and bond information services; provided, however, that the failure of the registered owner to receive such notice, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond. By the date fixed for any such redemption, due provision shall be made with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed. If such written notice of redemption is sent and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided above, the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed thereby automatically shall be treated as redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, and they shall not bear interest after the date fixed for redemption, and they shall not be regarded as being outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000, at the written request of the registered owner, and in aggregate amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Issuer, all as provided in the Bond Resolution.

IF AT THE TIME OF MAILING of notice of optional redemption there shall not have either been deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent immediately available funds sufficient to redeem all the Bonds called for redemption, such notice must state that it is conditional, and is subject to the deposit of the redemption moneys with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent at or prior to the redemption date, and such notice shall be of no effect unless such moneys are so deposited on or prior to the redemption date. If such redemption is not effectuated, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, within 5 days thereafter, give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given that such moneys were not so received and shall rescind the redemption.

ALL BONDS OF THIS SERIES are issuable solely as fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, in the denomination of any integral multiple of \$5,000. As provided in the Bond Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be assigned, transferred, converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, having the same denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000 as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, all in accordance with the form and procedures set forth in the Bond Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any integral multiple of \$5,000 to the assignee or assignees in whose name or names this Bond or any such portion or portions hereof is or are to be registered. The form of Assignment printed or endorsed on this Bond may be executed by the registered owner to evidence the assignment hereof, but such method is not exclusive, and other instruments of assignment satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar may be used to evidence the assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof from time to time by the registered owner. The Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable standard or customary fees and charges for assigning, transferring, converting and exchanging any Bond or portion thereof will be paid by the Issuer. In any circumstance, any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto shall be paid by the one requesting such assignment, transfer, conversion or exchange, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion, or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date, or, (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 30 days prior to its redemption date.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is changed by the Issuer, resigns, or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Issuer has covenanted in the Bond Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Bonds.

IT IS HEREBY certified, recited, and covenanted that this Bond has been duly and validly authorized, issued, sold, and delivered; that all acts, conditions, and things required or proper to be performed, exist, and be done precedent to or in the authorization, issuance, and delivery of this Bond have been performed, existed, and been done in accordance with law; that this Bond and other parity bonds, are special obligations of the Issuer payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the "Pledged Revenues", as defined in the Bond Resolution, which include payments and amounts derived by the Issuer from various contracts styled "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract," between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas.

THE ISSUER has reserved the right, subject to the restrictions stated or referred to in the Bond Resolution, to issue additional parity revenue bonds which also may be made payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues.

THE ISSUER also has reserved the right to amend the Bond Resolution with the approval of the owners of a majority in principal amount of all outstanding bonds secured by and payable from a

first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution.

THE REGISTERED OWNER hereof shall never have the right to demand payment of this Bond or the interest hereon from taxes or from any source whatsoever other than specified in the Bond Resolution.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Bond Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Bond Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the governing body of the Issuer, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Bond Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Issuer.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this Bond to be signed with the manual or facsimile signature of the President of the Board of Directors of the Issuer and countersigned with the manual or facsimile signature of the Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, and has caused the official seal of the Issuer to be duly impressed, or placed in facsimile, on this Bond.

Secretary, Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas

President, Board of Directors,
Trinity River Authority of Texas

(SEAL)

FORM OF
PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE
(To be executed if this Bond is not accompanied by an executed Registration Certificate of the
Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas)

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Bond Resolution described in the text of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion or replacement of, or in exchange for, a bond, bonds, or a portion of a bond or bonds of a Series which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Dated

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY,
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
Paying Agent/Registrar

By _____
Authorized Representative

FORM OF ASSIGNMENT

ASSIGNMENT

For value received, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

Please insert Social Security or Taxpayer
Identification Number of Transferee

(Please print or typewrite name and address,
including zip code of Transferee)

the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints
_____, attorney, to register the transfer of the within Bond on the books kept for
registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature Guaranteed:

NOTICE: Signature(s) must be guaranteed by
an eligible guarantor institution participating in
a securities transfer association recognized
signature guarantee program.

NOTICE: The signature above must correspond
with the name of the registered owner as it
appears upon the front of this Bond in every
particular, without alteration or enlargement or
any change whatsoever.

FORM OF REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE OF

THE COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS:

COMPTROLLER'S REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE: REGISTER NO.

I hereby certify that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity, and approved by the
Attorney General of the State of Texas, and that this Bond has been registered by the Comptroller of
Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Witness my signature and seal this

Comptroller of Public Accounts
of the State of Texas

(COMPTROLLER'S SEAL)

5. **DEFINITIONS.** The definitions set forth in the preamble hereto are incorporated herein as if set forth in this section. As used in this Resolution the following terms shall have the meanings set forth below, unless the text hereof specifically indicates otherwise:

The terms "Authority" and "Issuer" shall have the meaning set forth in the preamble.

The term "Board" means the Board of Directors of the Issuer, being the governing body of the Issuer and it is further resolved that the declarations and covenants of the Issuer contained in this Resolution are made by, and for and on behalf of the Board and the Issuer, and are binding upon the Board and the Issuer for all purposes.

The terms "Bond Resolution" and "Resolution" mean this resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Issuer on August 24, 2011, authorizing the issuance of the Bonds.

The term "Bonds" means collectively the Bonds authorized by this Resolution, and all substitute bonds exchanged therefor and other substitute bonds as provided for in this Resolution.

The term "Parity Bonds" means collectively (i) the Bonds and (ii) any Series 2000 Bonds, Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009 Bonds, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) which will be outstanding and payable from the Pledged Revenues after the delivery of the Bonds.

The term "Additional Bonds" means the additional parity bonds permitted to be authorized in this Resolution.

The terms "Denton Creek System" and "System" mean all of the Issuer's wastewater reception, treatment, and disposal facilities, as described and defined in the Contracts, serving the Contracting Parties in the area of the watershed or drainage basin of Denton Creek (a tributary of the Trinity River) in Denton and Tarrant Counties, Texas, together with all improvements and additions to and extensions, enlargements, and replacements of such facilities. However, said terms do not include any facilities acquired or constructed by the Issuer with the proceeds from the issuance of "Special Facilities Bonds", which are hereby defined as being revenue obligations of the Issuer which are not issued as Additional Bonds, and which are payable from any source, contract, or revenues whatsoever other than the Pledged Revenues; and Special Facilities Bonds may be issued for any lawful purpose and made payable from any source, contract, or revenues whatsoever other than the Pledged Revenues.

The term "Initial Contracting Parties" means the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, and Roanoke, Texas.

The term "First Supplemental Contracting Parties" means the City of Southlake, Texas, and Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 1 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas (formerly Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas).

The term "Second Supplemental Contracting Party" means the City of Keller, Texas.

The term "Third Supplemental Contracting Party" means Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas (formerly Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas).

The term "Fourth Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Flower Mound, Texas.

The term "Fifth Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Westlake, Texas.

The term "Sixth Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Northlake, Texas.

The term "Seventh Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Argyle, Texas.

The term "Contracting Parties" means the Initial Contracting Parties, the First Supplemental Contracting Parties, the Second Supplemental Contracting Party, the Third Supplemental Contracting Party, the Fourth Supplemental Contracting Party, the Fifth Supplemental Contracting Party, the Sixth Supplemental Contracting Party, the Seventh Supplemental Contracting Party, and any other entity which becomes an Additional Contracting Party and therefore a Contracting Party pursuant to the Base Contract, the First Supplemental Contract, the Second Supplemental Contract, the Third Supplemental Contract, the Fourth Supplemental Contract, the Fifth Supplemental Contract, the Sixth Supplemental Contract and the Seventh Supplemental Contract.

The term "Base Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas-Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract, dated October 28, 1987, between the Issuer and the Initial Contracting Parties.

The term "First Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Supplemental Contract (City of Southlake and Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1), dated April 27, 1988, between the Issuer and the First Supplemental Contracting Parties.

The term "Second Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Second Supplemental Contract (City of Keller, Texas), dated April 22, 1992, between the Issuer and the Second Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Third Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Third Supplemental Contract (Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3), dated August 24, 1994, between the Issuer and the Third Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Fourth Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fourth Supplemental Contract (Town of Flower Mound, Texas), dated March 1, 2000, between the Issuer and the Fourth Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Fifth Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fifth Supplemental Contract (Town of Westlake, Texas), dated March 1, 2000, between the Issuer and the Fifth Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Sixth Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Northlake, Texas), dated December 1, 2001, between the Issuer and the Sixth Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Seventh Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Argyle, Texas), dated December 6, 2006, as amended on December 5, 2007, between the Issuer and the Seventh Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Contracts" means collectively (a) the Base Contract, (b) the First Supplemental Contract, (c) the Second Supplemental Contract, (d) the Third Supplemental Contract, (e) the Fourth

Supplemental Contract, (f) the Fifth Supplemental Contract, (g) the Sixth Supplemental Contract, (h) the Seventh Supplemental Contract, (i) any contracts with any entity which becomes an Additional Contracting Party and therefore a Contracting Party pursuant to the Base Contract, and (j) all other contracts and agreements executed between the Issuer and other entities in connection with the services of the System.

The terms "Gross Revenues of the System" and "Gross Revenues" mean all of the revenues, income, rentals, rates, fees, and charges of every nature derived by the Issuer from the operation and/or ownership of the System, including specifically all payments and amounts received by the Issuer from Contracts, and any income from the investment of money in any Funds created by this Resolution, excepting any amounts required to be rebated to the Internal Revenue Service in accordance with this Resolution.

The term "Operation and Maintenance Expenses" means all costs and expenses of operation and maintenance of the System, including (for greater certainty but without limiting the generality of the foregoing) repairs and replacements for which no special fund is created in the resolutions authorizing the issuance of Parity Bonds, operating personnel, the cost of utilities, the costs of supervision, engineering, accounting, auditing, legal services, supplies, services, administration of the System, including general overhead expenses of the Issuer attributable to the System, insurance premiums, equipment necessary for proper operation and maintenance of the System, and payments made by the Issuer in satisfaction of judgments resulting from claims not covered by the Issuer's insurance arising in connection with the operation and maintenance of the System. The term also includes the charges of the bank or banks and other entities acting as paying agents and/or registrars for any Bonds. The term does not include depreciation.

The terms "Net Revenues of the Authority's System", "Net Revenues of the System" and "Net Revenues" shall mean the Gross Revenues of the System less the Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System.

The term "Pledged Revenues" means: (a) the Net Revenues of the System and (b) any additional revenues, income, receipts, donations, or other resources derived or received or to be received from any public or private source, whether pursuant to an agreement or otherwise, which in the future may, at the option of the Issuer, be pledged to the payment of the Bonds or the Additional Bonds.

The terms "year" or "fiscal year" shall mean the Authority's fiscal year, which initially shall be the year commencing December 1 of each calendar year and ending on November 30 of the following calendar year, but which subsequently may be any other 12 month period hereafter established by the Issuer as a fiscal year.

Section 6. PLEDGE. (a) The Bonds authorized by this Resolution are "Additional Bonds" as permitted by Sections 18 and 19 of the resolutions authorizing the issuance of the Series 2000 Bonds, the Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009 Bonds, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued), and Sections 5 through 21 of this Resolution are supplemental to and cumulative of Sections 5 through 21 of the resolutions authorizing the issuance of the Series 2000 Bonds, Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009 Bonds, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued), with Sections 5 through 21 of this Resolution to be applicable to all Parity Bonds. The Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds, and the interest thereon, are and shall be secured equally and ratably on a parity by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues, and the Pledged Revenues are further pledged to the establishment and maintenance of the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund as provided in this Resolution.

(b) Chapter 1208, Government Code, applies to the issuance of the Bonds and the pledge of the Pledged Revenues granted by the Issuer under this Section, and is therefore valid, effective, and perfected. If Texas law is amended at any time while the Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that the pledge of the Pledged Revenues granted by the Issuer under this Section is to be subject to the filing requirements of Chapter 9, Business & Commerce Code, then in order to preserve to the registered owners of the Bonds the perfection of the security interest in said pledge, the Issuer agrees to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under Texas law to comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9, Business & Commerce Code and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

Section 7. REVENUE FUND CREATION. There has been created, and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer, and accounted for separate and apart from all other funds of the Issuer, a special fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Revenue Fund" (hereinafter called the "Revenue Fund"). All Gross Revenues of the System (excepting investment income from any Fund other than the Revenue Fund) shall be credited to the Revenue Fund promptly after they become available. All Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System shall be paid from the Gross Revenues of the System, as a first charge against same.

Section 8. INTEREST AND SINKING FUND. For the sole purpose of providing an interest and sinking fund for paying the principal of and interest on all Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds, as the same come due, there has been created and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Interest and Sinking Fund" (hereinafter called the "Interest and Sinking Fund").

Section 9. RESERVE FUND. There has been created and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Reserve Fund" (hereinafter called the "Reserve Fund"). The Reserve Fund shall be used solely for the purpose of finally retiring the last of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, or for paying when due the principal of and interest on any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds when and to the extent the amounts in the Interest and Sinking Fund and Contingency Fund are insufficient for such purpose.

Section 10. CONTINGENCY FUND. There has been created and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Contingency Fund" (hereinafter called the "Contingency Fund"). The Contingency Fund shall be used solely for the purpose of paying the costs of improvements, enlargements, extensions or additions, or other capital expenditures relating to the System, and unexpected or extraordinary repairs or replacements of the System for which System funds are not otherwise available, or for paying unexpected or extraordinary Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System for which System funds are not otherwise available, or for paying principal of and interest on any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, when and to the extent the amount in the Interest and Sinking Fund is insufficient for such purpose.

Section 11. REVENUE FUND. All Pledged Revenues shall be credited as received by the Issuer to the Revenue Fund, and shall be deposited from the Revenue Fund into the other Funds created by this Resolution, in the manner and amounts hereinafter provided, and each of such Fund shall have priority as to such deposits in the order in which they are treated in the following Sections.

Section 12. INTEREST AND SINKING FUND REQUIREMENTS. There shall be deposited into the Interest and Sinking Fund the following:

(a) promptly after the delivery of the Bonds the Issuer shall cause to be deposited to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund, from the proceeds received from the sale and delivery of the Bonds, the accrued interest received, if any, plus a sum of money sufficient to pay interest on the Bonds issued for the acquisition and construction of the Project for a period not exceeding 24 months following the delivery of the Bonds, as designated by the Authorized Officer, and such deposit shall be used to pay part of the interest coming due on the Bonds during the period of the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the System.

(b) on or before the last day of the January or July, whichever comes first, immediately following delivery of the Bonds to the purchaser thereof, and semiannually thereafter, on or before the last day of each January and July, an amount sufficient, together with other amounts, if any, then on hand in the Interest and Sinking Fund and available for such purpose, to pay the interest and/or principal and interest scheduled to accrue and come due on the Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds on the next succeeding interest payment date.

The Interest and Sinking Fund shall be used solely to pay the principal of and interest on the Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds as such principal matures and such interest comes due.

Section 13. RESERVE REQUIREMENTS. Immediately after the delivery of the Bonds, the Issuer will deposit in the Reserve Fund an amount of money derived from the sale of the Bonds which, when added to the amount of money and investments now on deposit will at least equal in market value the average annual principal and interest requirements of the Parity Bonds (the "Reserve Required Amount"). No deposits shall be made into the Reserve Fund as long as the money and investments in the Reserve Fund are at least equal in market value to the Reserve Required Amount; but if and whenever the market value of money and investments in the Reserve Fund is reduced below said Reserve Required Amount because of a decrease in market value of investments, then the Issuer shall require the Contracting Parties to increase their payments under their Contracts as soon as practicable, and in any event within one year, in an amount sufficient to restore the Reserve Fund to the Reserve Required Amount; and in the event the Reserve Fund is used to pay the principal of or interest on the Parity Bonds because of insufficient amounts being available in the Interest and Sinking Fund and/or the Contingency Fund, then the Issuer shall require the Contracting Parties to increase their payments under their Contracts in an amount sufficient to restore the Reserve Fund to the Reserve Required Amount in market value, and the Issuer shall deposit in the Reserve Fund, in approximately equal semiannual installments, such amounts as are required to restore the Reserve Fund to the Reserve Required Amount in market value within five years from any date of the use of the Reserve Fund to pay such principal or interest. If and whenever Additional Bonds are issued pursuant to Section 18, then the term "Reserve Required Amount" thereafter shall mean an amount in market value equal to the average annual principal and interest requirements of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds which will be outstanding after the issuance of each installment of Additional Bonds.

Section 14. CONTINGENCY REQUIREMENTS. There is currently on deposit in the Contingency Fund the sum of \$100,000. No additional deposits are required to be made to the credit of the Contingency Fund unless and until such amount therein is reduced or depleted or unless the Issuer, upon the advice and recommendation of an independent engineer or firm of engineers, determines it necessary to increase such amount in order adequately to provide for contingencies related to the System, or unless the Issuer provides for an increase in such amount in any resolution authorizing Additional Bonds. If and when such amount in the Contingency Fund is reduced or depleted, or an increase in such amount has been provided for, then, subject and subordinate to making

the required deposits to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund, such reduction or depletion shall be restored, and/or such amount shall be increased, to the extent not otherwise funded, from amounts which shall be provided for such purpose in the Issuer's Annual Budget for the next ensuing fiscal year or years; provided that the Issuer is not required to budget more than one third of the amount to be accumulated for such purpose during any one fiscal year. So long as the Contingency Fund contains money and investments not less than the amount of \$100,000 (or the amount to which the Contingency Fund may be increased as aforesaid) in market value, any surplus in the Contingency Fund over said amount shall, immediately upon receipt, be deposited to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund.

Section 15. INVESTMENTS. (a) Money in any Fund maintained pursuant to this Resolution may, at the option of the Issuer, be placed in interest bearing time deposits with banks secured by obligations of the kind hereinafter described, or be invested in direct obligations of the United States of America, obligations the principal of and interest on which are guaranteed by the United States of America, or invested in direct obligations of the Federal Intermediate Credit Banks, Federal Land Banks, Banks for Cooperatives, or Federal Home Loan Banks. Such deposits and investments shall be made consistent with the estimated requirements of such Funds, and any obligation in which money is so invested shall be kept and held for the benefit of the owners of the Parity Bonds, and shall be promptly sold and the proceeds of sale applied to the making of all payments required to be made from the Fund from which the investment was made. All earnings from the deposit or investment of any such Fund shall be credited to such Fund, except that if on February 1 of any year the Reserve Fund should contain an amount in excess of the Reserve Required Amount in market value, such excess shall be deposited into the Interest and Sinking Fund. All investment earnings on deposit in the Interest and Sinking Fund shall reduce the amounts which otherwise would be required to be deposited therein. Uninvested money in any Fund shall be secured in the manner prescribed by law for securing funds of the Issuer.

(b) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Resolution, all investment income, if any, required by the United States Internal Revenue Code to be rebated by the Issuer to the Internal Revenue Service in order to prevent the Parity Bonds from being or becoming taxable "arbitrage bonds" under said Code shall be withdrawn from each Fund created by this Resolution and so rebated to the extent so required.

Section 16. DEFICIENCIES; EXCESS PLEDGED REVENUES. (a) If on any occasion there shall not be sufficient Pledged Revenues to make the required deposits into the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund, then such deficiency shall be made up as soon as possible from the next available Pledged Revenues.

(b) Subject to making the required deposits to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund, when and as required by this Resolution, or any resolution authorizing the issuance of Additional Bonds, the excess Pledged Revenues may be used for any lawful purpose relating to the System.

Section 17. PAYMENT OF PARITY BONDS AND ADDITIONAL BONDS. On or before the February 1 or August 1, whichever comes first, immediately following delivery of the Bonds to the purchaser thereof, and semiannually on or before each February 1 and August 1 thereafter while any of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds are outstanding and unpaid, the Issuer shall make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar, out of the Interest and Sinking Fund, or the Contingency Fund or the Reserve Fund, if necessary, money sufficient to pay such interest on and such principal of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds as will be payable on each such February 1 and August 1.

Section 18. **ADDITIONAL BONDS.** (a) The Issuer shall have the right and power at any time and from time to time, and in one or more Series or issues, to authorize, issue, and deliver additional parity revenue bonds (herein called "Additional Bonds"), in accordance with law, in any amounts, for any lawful purpose related to the System, including the refunding of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds. Such Additional Bonds, if and when authorized, issued, and delivered in accordance with the provisions hereof, shall be secured by and made payable equally and ratably on a parity with the Parity Bonds, from a first lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues.

(b) The Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund established pursuant to this Resolution shall secure and be used to pay all Additional Bonds as well as the Parity Bonds, all on a parity. However, each resolution under which Additional Bonds are issued shall provide and require that, in addition to the amounts required by the provisions of this Resolution and the provisions of each resolution authorizing Additional Bonds to be deposited to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Issuer shall deposit to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund at least such amounts as are required for the payment of all principal of and interest on said Additional Bonds then being issued, as the same come due; and that the aggregate amount to be accumulated and maintained in the Reserve Fund shall be increased (if and to the extent necessary) to an amount not less than the average annual principal and interest requirements of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds which will be outstanding after the issuance and delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds; and that the required additional amount shall be so accumulated by the deposit in the Reserve Fund of all or any part of said required additional amount in cash immediately after the delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds, or, at the option of the Issuer, by the deposit of said required additional amount (or any balance of said required additional amount not deposited in cash as permitted above) in 120 approximately equal monthly installments, made on or before the 25th day of each month following the delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds.

(c) All calculations of average annual principal and interest requirements made pursuant to this Section shall be made as of and from the date of the Additional Bonds then proposed to be issued.

(d) The principal of all Additional Bonds must be scheduled to be paid or mature on February 1 of the years in which such principal is scheduled to be paid or mature; and all interest thereon must be payable on February 1 and August 1, and for the purposes of this and all other Sections of this Resolution, principal amounts of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds or portions thereof which are required to be prepaid or redeemed on any date prior to scheduled due date or maturity pursuant to any mandatory redemption requirements shall be deemed to be due and maturing amounts of principal on the date required to be prepaid or redeemed.

Section 19. **FURTHER REQUIREMENTS FOR ADDITIONAL BONDS.** Additional Bonds shall be issued only in accordance with the provisions hereof, but notwithstanding any provisions hereof to the contrary, no installment, series, or issue of Additional Bonds shall be issued or delivered unless the President and the Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer sign a written certificate to the effect that the Issuer is not in default as to any covenant, condition, or obligation in connection with all outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, and the resolutions authorizing the same, that the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund each contains the amount then required to be therein, and that either (1) based on a report of an independent engineer or firm of engineers, the Pledged Revenues, in each fiscal year thereafter, commencing with the third complete fiscal year following the date of such report, are estimated to be at least equal to 1.25 times the average annual principal and interest requirements of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds to be outstanding after the delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds, or (2) based upon an opinion of legal counsel to the Issuer, there are Contracts then in effect pursuant to which the Contracting Parties and others, if any, which are parties to such Contracts are obligated to make payments to the Issuer during each fiscal year (including during periods when services of the System may not be available to such

Contracting Parties and others) in such amounts as shall be necessary to provide to the Issuer Pledged Revenues sufficient to pay when due all principal of and interest on all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds to be outstanding after the issuance of the proposed Additional Bonds, and to make the deposits into the Reserve Fund as required under this Resolution.

Section 20. GENERAL COVENANTS. The Issuer further covenants and agrees that:

(a) **PERFORMANCE.** It will faithfully perform at all times any and all covenants, undertakings, stipulations, and provisions contained in each resolution authorizing the issuance of the Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds, and in each and every Parity Bond and Additional Bond; that it will promptly pay or cause to be paid the principal of and interest on every Parity Bond and Additional Bond, on the dates and in the places and manner prescribed in such resolutions and Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, and that it will, at the times and in the manner prescribed, deposit or cause to be deposited the amounts required to be deposited into the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund and any holder of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds may require the Issuer, its Board of Directors, and its officials and employees, to carry out, respect, or enforce the covenants and obligations of each resolution authorizing the issuance of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, by all legal and equitable means, including specifically, but without limitation, the use and filing of mandamus proceedings, in any court of competent jurisdiction, against the Issuer, its Board of Directors, and its officials and employees.

(b) **ISSUER'S LEGAL AUTHORITY.** It is a duly created and existing conservation and reclamation district of the State of Texas pursuant to Article 16, Section 59, of the Texas Constitution, and Chapter 518, Acts of the 54th Legislature, Regular Session, 1955, as amended, and is duly authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to create and issue the Parity Bonds; that all action on its part of the creation and issuance of the Parity Bonds has been duly and effectively taken, and that the Parity Bonds in the hands of the owners thereof are and will be valid and enforceable special obligations of the Issuer in accordance with their terms.

(c) **TITLE.** It has or will obtain lawful title to, or the lawful right to use and operate, the lands, buildings, and facilities constituting the System and will use its best efforts to acquire and construct the System as provided in the Contracts, that it warrants that it will defend the title to or lawful right to use and operate, all of the aforesaid lands, buildings, and facilities, and every part thereof, for the benefit of the owners of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds against the claims and demands of all persons whomsoever, that it is lawfully qualified to pledge the Pledged Revenues to the payment of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds in the manner prescribed herein, and has lawfully exercised such rights.

(d) **LIENS.** It will from time to time and before the same become delinquent pay and discharge all taxes, assessments, and governmental charges, if any, which shall be lawfully imposed upon it, or the System, that it will pay all lawful claims for rents, royalties, labor, materials, and supplies which if unpaid might by law become a lien or charge thereon, the lien of which would be prior to or interfere with the liens hereof, so that the priority of the liens granted hereunder shall be fully preserved in the manner provided herein, and that it will not create or suffer to be created any mechanic's, laborer's, materialman's, or other lien or charge which might or could be prior to the liens hereof, or do or suffer any matter or thing whereby the liens hereof might or could be impaired; provided, however, that no such tax, assessment, or charge, and that no such claims which might be used as the basis of a mechanic's, laborer's, materialman's, or other lien or charge, shall be required to be paid so long as the validity of the same shall be contested in good faith by the Issuer.

(e) **OPERATION OF SYSTEM.** That while the Parity Bonds or any Additional Bonds are outstanding and unpaid it will cause the System to be continuously and efficiently operated and maintained in good condition, repair, and working order, and at a reasonable cost.

(f) **FURTHER ENCUMBRANCE.** That while the Parity Bonds or any Additional Bonds are outstanding and unpaid the Issuer shall not additionally encumber the Pledged Revenues in any manner, except as permitted hereby in connection with Additional Bonds, unless said encumbrance is made junior and subordinate in all respects to the liens, pledges, covenants and agreements hereof and any resolution authorizing the issuance of Additional Bonds; but the right of the Issuer and the Board to issue revenue bonds for any lawful purpose payable from a subordinate lien on the Pledged Revenues is specifically recognized and retained.

(g) **SALE OF PROPERTY.** That while the Parity Bonds or any Additional Bonds, are outstanding and unpaid, the Issuer will maintain its current legal corporate status as a conservation and reclamation district, and the Issuer shall not sell, convey, mortgage, or in any manner transfer title to, or lease, or otherwise dispose of the entire System, or any significant or substantial part thereof; provided that whenever the Issuer deems it necessary or advisable to dispose of any real or personal property, machinery, fixtures, or equipment, it may sell or otherwise dispose of such property, machinery, fixtures, or equipment if the Issuer determines that such property, machinery, fixtures, or equipment are not needed for System purposes, or if the Issuer has made arrangements to replace the same or provide substitutes therefor.

(h) **INSURANCE.** (1) That it will carry fire, casualty, public liability, and other insurance (including self-insurance to the extent deemed advisable by the Issuer) on the System for purposes and in amounts which ordinarily would be carried by a privately owned utility company owning and operating such facilities, except that the Issuer shall not be required to carry liability insurance except to insure itself against risk of loss due to claims for which it can, in the opinion of the Issuer's legal counsel, be liable under the Texas Tort Claims Act or any similar law or judicial decision. Such insurance will provide, to the extent feasible and practical, for the restoration of damaged or destroyed properties and equipment to minimize the interruption of the services of such facilities.

All such policies shall be open to the inspection of the owners of the Parity Bonds and their representatives at all reasonable times.

(2) Upon the happening of any loss or damage covered by insurance from one or more of said causes, the Issuer shall make due proof of loss and shall do all things necessary or desirable to cause the insuring companies to make payment in full directly to the Issuer. The proceeds of insurance covering such property, together with any other funds necessary and available for such purpose, shall be used forthwith by the Issuer for repairing the property damaged or replacing the property destroyed; provided, however, that if said insurance proceeds and other funds are insufficient for such purpose, then said insurance proceeds pertaining to the System shall be used promptly as follows:

(a) for the redemption prior to maturity of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, if any, ratably in the proportion that the outstanding principal of each Series or issue of Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds bears to the total outstanding principal of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds; provided that if on any such occasion the principal of any such Series or issue is not subject to redemption, it shall not be regarded as outstanding in making the foregoing computation; or

(b) if none of the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds is subject to redemption, then for the purchase on the open market and retirement of said Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, in the same proportion as prescribed in the foregoing clause (2), to the extent practicable; provided that the purchase price for any such Parity Bond or Additional Bond shall not exceed the redemption price of such Parity Bond or Additional Bond on the first date upon which it becomes subject to redemption; or

(c) to the extent that the foregoing clauses (a) and (b) cannot be complied with at the time, the insurance proceeds, or the remainder thereof, shall be deposited in a special and separate trust fund, at an official depository of the Issuer, to be designated the Insurance Account. The Insurance Account shall be held until such time as the foregoing clauses (a) and/or (b) can be complied with, or until other funds become available which, together with the Insurance Account, will be sufficient to make the repairs or replacements originally required, whichever of said events occurs first.

(i) **RATE COVENANT.** It will fix, establish, maintain, and collect such rentals, rates, charges, and fees for the use and availability of the System as are necessary to produce Gross Revenues of the System sufficient, together with any other Pledged Revenues, (a) to pay all Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System, and (b) to make all payments and deposits required to be made into the Interest and Sinking Fund and to maintain the Reserve Fund and the Contingency Fund, when and as required by the resolutions authorizing all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds.

(j) **RECORDS.** Proper books of records and account will be kept in which full, true, and correct entries will be made of all dealings, activities, and transactions relating to the System, the Pledged Revenues, and all Funds created pursuant to this Bond Resolution; and all books, documents, and vouchers relating thereto shall at all reasonable times be made available for inspection upon request of the owner of any Parity Bond.

(k) **AUDITS.** Each fiscal year while any of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds are outstanding, an audit will be made of its books and accounts relating to the System and the Pledged Revenues by an independent certified public accountant or an independent firm of certified public accountants. As soon as practicable after the close of each fiscal year, and when said audit has been completed and made available to the Issuer, a copy of such audit for the preceding fiscal year shall be mailed to any owner of any Parity Bond who shall so request in writing. Such annual audit reports shall be open to the inspection of the owners of the Parity Bonds and their agents and representatives at all reasonable times.

(l) **GOVERNMENTAL AGENCIES.** It will comply with all of the terms and conditions of any and all franchises and permits applicable to the System granted by any governmental agency, and all franchises, permits, and agreements applicable to the System and the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds entered into between the Issuer and any governmental agency, and the Issuer will take all action necessary to enforce said terms and conditions; and the Issuer will obtain and keep in full force and effect all franchises, permits, and other requirements necessary with respect to the acquisition, construction, operation, and maintenance of the System.

(m) **CONTRACTS.** It will comply with the terms and conditions of the Contracts and will cause the Contracting Parties and others to comply with all of their obligations thereunder by all lawful means;

and that the Contracts will not be changed, rescinded, modified, or amended in any way which would have a materially adverse effect on the operation and maintenance of the System by the Issuer or the rights of owners of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds.

(n) ANNUAL BUDGET. The Issuer shall prepare and adopt an Annual Budget for the System for each fiscal year as required by the Contracts.

Section 21. AMENDMENT OF RESOLUTION. (a) The owners of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds aggregating a majority in principal amount of the aggregate principal amount of then outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment to any resolution authorizing the issuance of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, which may be deemed necessary or desirable by the Issuer, provided, however, that nothing herein contained shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions in said resolutions or in the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds so as to:

- (1) Make any change in the maturity of the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds;
- (2) Reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds;
- (3) Reduce the amount of the principal payable on the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds;
- (4) Modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;
- (5) Affect the rights of the owners of less than all of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds then outstanding;
- (6) Change the minimum percentage of the principal amount of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment.

(b) If at any time the Issuer shall desire to amend a resolution under this Section, the Issuer shall cause notice of the proposed amendment to be published in a financial newspaper or journal published in The City of New York, New York, once during each calendar week for at least two successive calendar weeks. Such notice shall briefly set forth the nature of the proposed amendment and shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of each Paying Agent/Registrar for the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, for inspection by all owners of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds. Such publication is not required, however, if such notice in writing is given to the owner of each of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds.

(c) Whenever at any time not less than thirty days, and within one year, from the date of the first publication of said notice or other service of written notice the Issuer shall receive an instrument or instruments executed by the owners of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds then outstanding, which instrument or instruments shall refer to the proposed amendment described in said notice and which specifically consent to and approve such amendment in substantially the form of the copy thereof on file as aforesaid, the Issuer may adopt the amendatory resolution in substantially the same form.

(d) Upon the adoption of any amendatory resolution pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the resolution being amended shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with the amendatory resolution, and the respective rights, duties, and obligations of the Issuer and all the owners of then outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds and all future Additional Parity Bonds shall thereafter be determined, exercised, and enforced hereunder, subject in all respects to such amendment.

(e) Any consent given by the owner of a Parity Bond or Additional Bonds pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall be irrevocable for a period of six months from the date of the first publication of the notice provided for in this Section, and shall be conclusive and binding upon such owner and all future owners of the principal amount of such Parity Bond or Additional Bond and any bond issued in substitution and exchange therefor during such period. Such consent may be revoked at any time after six months from the date of the first publication of such notice by the owner who gave such consent, or by a successor in title, by filing notice thereof with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such Parity Bond or Additional Bond, and the Issuer, but such revocation shall not be effective if the owner of a majority in aggregate principal amount of then outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds as in this Section defined have, prior to the attempted revocation, consented to and approved the amendment.

(f) For the purpose of this Section, all matters relating to the ownership of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds shall be determined from the Registration Books of the Issuer kept by the Paying/Registrar for such Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds.

Section 22. DEFEASANCE OF BONDS. (a) Any Bond and the interest thereon shall be deemed to be paid, retired, and no longer outstanding (a "Defeased Bond") within the meaning of this Resolution, except to the extent provided in subsection (d) of this Section, when payment of the principal of such Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date (whether such due date be by reason of maturity or otherwise) either (i) shall have been made or caused to be made in accordance with the terms thereof, or (ii) shall have been provided for on or before such due date by irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other instrument (the "Future Escrow Agreement") for such payment (1) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such payment or (2) Defeasance Securities that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Issuer with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. At such time as a Bond shall be deemed to be a Defeased Bond hereunder, as aforesaid, such Bond and the interest thereon shall no longer be secured by, payable from, or entitled to the benefits of, the Pledged Revenues as provided in this Resolution, and such principal and interest shall be payable solely from such money or Defeasance Securities. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, it is hereby provided that any determination not to redeem Defeased Bonds that is made in conjunction with the payment arrangements specified in subsection 22(a)(i) or (ii) shall not be irrevocable, provided that: (1) in the proceedings providing for such payment arrangements, the Issuer expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (2) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the payment arrangements; and (3) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

(b) Any moneys so deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar may at the written direction of the Issuer also be invested in Defeasance Securities, maturing in the amounts and times as hereinbefore set forth, and all income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar that is not required for the payment of the Bonds and interest thereon, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be turned over to the Issuer, or deposited as directed in writing by the Issuer. Any Future Escrow Agreement pursuant to which the money and/or Defeasance Securities are held for the payment of Defeased Bonds may contain provisions permitting the investment or reinvestment of such moneys in Defeasance Securities or the substitution of other Defeasance Securities upon the satisfaction of the requirements specified in subsection 22(a)(i) or (ii). All income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar which is not required for the payment of the Defeased Bonds, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be remitted to the Issuer or deposited as directed in writing by the Issuer.

(c) The term "Defeasance Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds.

(d) Until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for such Defeased Bonds the same as if they had not been defeased, and the Issuer shall make proper arrangements to provide and pay for such services as required by this Resolution.

(e) In the event that the Issuer elects to defease less than all of the principal amount of Bonds of a maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall select, or cause to be selected, such amount of Bonds by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate.

Section 23. DAMAGED, MUTILATED, LOST, STOLEN OR DESTROYED BONDS. (a) Replacement Bonds. In the event any outstanding Bond is damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall cause to be printed, executed and delivered, a new bond of the same principal amount, maturity and interest rate, as the damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Bond, in replacement for such Bond in the manner hereinafter provided.

(b) Application for Replacement Bonds. Application for replacement of damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Bonds shall be made by the registered owner thereof to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Bond, the registered owner applying for a replacement bond shall furnish to the Issuer and to the Paying Agent/Registrar such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless from any loss or damage with respect thereto. Also, in every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Bond, the registered owner shall furnish to the Issuer and to the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence to their satisfaction of the loss, theft or destruction of such Bond, as the case may be. In every case of damage or mutilation of a Bond, the registered owner shall surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation the Bond so damaged or mutilated.

(c) No Default Occurred. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, in the event any such Bond shall have matured, and no default has occurred which is then continuing in the payment of the principal of, redemption premium, if any, or interest on the Bond, the Issuer may authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a damaged or mutilated Bond) instead of issuing a replacement Bond, provided security or indemnity is furnished as above provided in this Section.

(d) Charge for Issuing Replacement Bonds. Prior to the issuance of any replacement bond, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall charge the registered owner of such Bond with all legal, printing, and other expenses in connection therewith. Every replacement bond issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section by virtue of the fact that any Bond is lost, stolen, or destroyed shall constitute a contractual obligation of the Issuer whether or not the lost, stolen, or destroyed Bond shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Resolution equally and proportionately with any and all other Bonds duly issued under this Resolution.

(e) Authority for Issuing Replacement Bonds. In accordance with Subchapter B, Chapter 1206, Texas Government Code, this Section shall constitute authority for the issuance of any such replacement bond without necessity of further action by the governing body of the Issuer or any other body or person, and the duty of the replacement of such bonds is hereby authorized and imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver such Bonds in the form and manner and with the effect, as provided in Section 3 of this Resolution for Bonds issued in conversion and exchange for other Bonds.

Section 24. COVENANTS REGARDING TAX-EXEMPTION. The Issuer covenants to take any action necessary to assure, or refrain from any action which would adversely affect, the treatment of the Bonds as obligations described in section 103 of the Code, the interest on which is not includable in the

"gross income" of the holder for purposes of federal income taxation. In furtherance thereof, the Issuer covenants as follows:

(a) to take any action to assure that no more than 10 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds or the projects financed therewith (less amounts deposited to a reserve fund, if any) are used for any "private business use," as defined in section 141(b)(6) of the Code or, if more than 10 percent of the proceeds or the projects financed therewith are so used, such amounts, whether or not received by the Issuer, with respect to such private business use, do not, under the terms of this Resolution or any underlying arrangement, directly or indirectly, secure or provide for the payment of more than 10 percent of the debt service on the Bonds, in contravention of section 141(b)(2) of the Code;

(b) to take any action to assure that in the event that the "private business use" described in subsection (a) hereof exceeds 5 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds or the projects financed therewith (less amounts deposited into a reserve fund, if any) then the amount in excess of 5 percent is used for a "private business use" which is "related" and not "disproportionate," within the meaning of section 141(b)(3) of the Code, to the governmental use;

(c) to take any action to assure that no amount which is greater than the lesser of \$5,000,000, or 5 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds (less amounts deposited into a reserve fund, if any) is directly or indirectly used to finance loans to persons, other than state or local governmental units, in contravention of section 141(c) of the Code;

(d) to refrain from taking any action which would otherwise result in the Bonds being treated as "private activity bonds" within the meaning of section 141(b) of the Code;

(e) to refrain from taking any action that would result in the Bonds being "federally guaranteed" within the meaning of section 149(b) of the Code;

(f) to refrain from using any portion of the proceeds of the Bonds, directly or indirectly, to acquire or to replace funds which were used, directly or indirectly, to acquire investment property (as defined in section 148(b)(2) of the Code) which produces a materially higher yield over the term of the Bonds, other than investment property acquired with --

(1) proceeds of the Bonds invested for a reasonable temporary period until such proceeds are needed for the purpose for which the bonds are issued,

(2) amounts invested in a bona fide debt service fund, within the meaning of section 1.148-1(b) of the Treasury Regulations, and

(3) amounts deposited in any reasonably required reserve or replacement fund to the extent such amounts do not exceed 10 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds;

(g) to otherwise restrict the use of the proceeds of the Bonds or amounts treated as proceeds of the Bonds, as may be necessary, so that the Bonds do not otherwise contravene the requirements of section 148 of the Code (relating to arbitrage) and, to the extent applicable, section 149(d) of the Code (relating to advance refundings);

(h) to pay to the United States of America at least once during each five-year period (beginning on the date of delivery of the Bonds) an amount that is at least equal to 90 percent of the "Excess Earnings," within the meaning of section 148(f) of the Code and to pay to the United States of America, not later than 60 days after the Bonds have been paid in full, 100 percent of the amount then required to be paid as a result of Excess Earnings under section 148(f) of the Code; and

In order to facilitate compliance with the above covenant (h), a "Rebate Fund" is hereby established by the Issuer for the sole benefit of the United States of America, and such fund shall not be subject to the claim of any other person, including without limitation the bondholders. The Rebate Fund is established for the additional purpose of compliance with section 148 of the Code.

For purposes of the foregoing (a) and (b), the Issuer understands that the term "proceeds" includes "disposition proceeds" as defined in the Treasury Regulations and, in the case of refunding bonds, transferred proceeds (if any) and the proceeds of the refunded bonds expended prior to the date of issuance of the Bonds. It is the understanding of the Issuer that the covenants contained herein are intended to assure compliance with the Code and any regulations or rulings promulgated by the U.S. Department of the Treasury pursuant thereto. In the event that regulations or rulings are hereafter promulgated which modify or expand provisions of the Code, as applicable to the Bonds, the Issuer will not be required to comply with any covenant contained herein to the extent that such failure to comply, in the opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel, will not adversely affect the exemption from federal income taxation of interest on the Bonds under section 103 of the Code. In the event that regulations or rulings are hereafter promulgated which impose additional requirements which are applicable to the Bonds, the Issuer agrees to comply with the additional requirements to the extent necessary, in the opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel, to preserve the exemption from federal income taxation of interest on the Bonds under section 103 of the Code. In furtherance of such intention, the Issuer hereby authorizes and directs the President of the Board of Authority, or the Authorized Officer, to execute any documents, certificates or reports required by the Code and to make such elections, on behalf of the Issuer, which may be permitted by the Code as are consistent with the purpose for the issuance of the Bonds. This Resolution is intended to satisfy the official intent requirements set forth in section 1.150-2 of the Treasury Regulations.

Section 25. CUSTODY, APPROVAL, AND REGISTRATION OF BONDS; BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION, CUSIP NUMBERS, AND INSURANCE. The President of the Board of Directors of the Issuer and the Authorized Officer are hereby authorized to have control of the Bonds issued hereunder and all necessary records and proceedings pertaining to the Bonds pending their delivery and their investigation, examination, and approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and their registration by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas. Upon registration of the Bonds said Comptroller of Public Accounts (or a deputy designated in writing to act for said Comptroller) shall manually sign the Comptroller's Registration Certificate on the Bonds, and the seal of said Comptroller shall be impressed, or placed in facsimile, on the Bonds. The approving legal opinion of the Issuer's Bond Counsel and the assigned CUSIP numbers may, at the option of the Issuer, be printed on the Bonds or on any Parity Bonds issued and delivered in conversion of and exchange or replacement of any Bond, but neither shall have any legal effect, and shall be solely for the convenience and information of the registered owners of the Bonds. If insurance is obtained on any of the Bonds, the Bonds and all other Bonds shall bear an appropriate legend concerning insurance as provided by the insurer.

Section 26. FURTHER PROVISIONS AND PROCEDURES. The President, Vice President and Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, the General Manager of the Issuer and all other officers, employees and agents of the Issuer, and each of them, shall be and they are hereby expressly authorized, empowered and directed from time to time and at any time to do and perform all such acts and things and to execute, acknowledge and deliver in the name and under the corporate seal and on behalf of the Issuer a Letter of Representation with DTC regarding the Book-Entry Only System, the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement with the Paying Agent/Registrar and all other instruments, whether or not herein mentioned, as may be necessary or desirable in order to carry out the terms and provisions of this Resolution, the Letter of Representation, the Bonds, the sale of the Bonds and the Official Statement. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, while the Bonds are subject to DTC's Book-Entry Only System and to the extent permitted by law, the Letter of Representation is hereby incorporated herein and its provisions shall prevail over any other provisions of this Resolution in the event of conflict. In case any officer whose signature shall appear on any Bond shall cease to be such officer before the

delivery of such Bond, such signature shall nevertheless be valid and sufficient for all purposes the same as if such officer had remained in office until such delivery.

Section 27. CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION. (a) As used in this Section, the following terms have the meanings ascribed to such terms below:

"MSRB" means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

"Rule" means SEC Rule 15c2-12, as amended from time to time.

"SEC" means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

(b) Pursuant to a Continuing Disclosure Agreement by and between the Issuer and the Contracting Parties, the Issuer and the Contracting Parties have undertaken for the benefit of the beneficial owners of the Bonds, to the extent set forth therein, to provide continuing disclosure of financial information and operating data with respect to the Contracting Parties in accordance with the Rule as promulgated by the SEC.

(c) The Issuer shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event, of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds:

1. Principal and interest payment delinquencies;
2. Non-payment related defaults, if material;
3. Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
4. Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
5. Substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
6. Adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds;
7. Modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material;
8. Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
9. Defeasances;
10. Release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material;
11. Rating changes;
12. Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Issuer;
13. The consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Issuer or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and
14. Appointment of a successor Paying Agent/Registrar or change in the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar, if material.

(d) The Issuer additionally covenants, for the benefit of the beneficial owners of the Bonds, and for the beneficial owners of Texas Water Development Board bonds, to request and use its best efforts to obtain the financial information and operating data from the Contracting Parties of the type to be included in Appendix B of any official statements of the Issuer relating to "Bonds" (as defined in the Continuing Disclosure Agreements), and to file, or cause to be filed, such financial information and operating data in the manner required by the Rule as if the Bonds had been initially sold pursuant to an "Offering" as defined in the Rule.

Section 28. INTEREST EARNINGS ON BOND PROCEEDS. Interest earnings derived from the investment of proceeds from the sale of the Bonds shall be used along with other bond proceeds for

the purpose for which the Bonds are issued set forth in Section 1 hereof; provided that after completion of such purpose, if any of such interest earnings remain on hand, such interest earnings shall be deposited in the Interest and Redemption Fund. It is further provided, however, that any interest earnings on bond proceeds which are required to be rebated to the United States of America pursuant to Section 24 hereof in order to prevent the Bonds from being arbitrage bonds shall be so rebated and not considered as interest earnings for the purposes of this Section.

Section 29. CONSTRUCTION FUND. The Issuer hereby creates and establishes and shall maintain on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Series 2011A Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Construction Fund" for use by the Issuer for payment of all lawful costs associated with the acquisition and construction of the Project as hereinbefore provided. Upon payment of all such costs, any moneys remaining on deposit in said Fund, to the extent not applied as set forth in Section 32(b) of this Resolution, shall be transferred to the Interest and Sinking Fund.

Section 30. ALLOCATION OF, AND LIMITATION ON, EXPENDITURES FOR THE PROJECT. The Issuer covenants to account for the expenditure of sale proceeds and investment earnings to be used for the purposes described in Section 1 of this Resolution (the "Project") on its books and records in accordance with the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code. The Issuer recognizes that in order for the proceeds to be considered used for the reimbursement of costs, the proceeds must be allocated to expenditures within 18 months of the later of the date that (1) the expenditure is made, or (2) the Project is completed; but in no event later than three years after the date on which the original expenditure is paid. The foregoing notwithstanding, the Issuer recognizes that in order for proceeds to be expended under the Internal Revenue Code, the sale proceeds or investment earnings must be expended no more than 60 days after the earlier of (1) the fifth anniversary of the delivery of the Bonds, or (2) the date the Bonds are retired. The Issuer agrees to obtain the advice of nationally-recognized bond counsel if such expenditure fails to comply with the foregoing to assure that such expenditure will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds. For purposes hereof, the issuer shall not be obligated to comply with this covenant if it obtains an opinion that such failure to comply will not adversely affect the excludability for federal income tax purposes from gross income of the interest.

Section 31. DISPOSITION OF PROJECT. The Issuer covenants that the property constituting the Project will not be sold or otherwise disposed in a transaction resulting in the receipt by the Issuer of cash or other compensation, unless the Issuer obtains an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel that such sale or other disposition will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds. For purposes of the foregoing, the portion of the property comprising personal property and disposed in the ordinary course shall not be treated as a transaction resulting in the receipt of cash or other compensation. For purposes hereof, the Issuer shall not be obligated to comply with this covenant if it obtains an opinion that such failure to comply will not adversely affect the excludability for federal income tax purposes from gross income of the interest.

Section 32. TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD PROVISIONS. (a) Final Accounting. The Issuer shall render a final accounting to the TWDB in reference to the total cost incurred by the Issuer for improvements and extensions to the System, together with a copy of "as built" plans of the project upon completion.

(b) Surplus Bond Proceeds. The Issuer shall use any surplus proceeds from the Bonds remaining after completion of the improvements, to ratably redeem, in inverse order of maturity, the Bonds owned by the TWDB.

(c) Annual Reports. Annual audits of the Issuer shall be delivered to the TWDB as long as the State of Texas owns any of the Bonds.

(d) Compliance with the TWDB's Rules and Regulations. The Issuer covenants to comply with the rules and regulations of the TWDB, and to maintain insurance on the Issuer's System in an amount

sufficient to protect the interests of the TWDB in the project. The Issuer (i) covenants to maintain rates and charges to the Contracting Parties sufficient to meet the debt service requirements on the Bonds and outstanding Parity Bonds and (ii) has required in existing Contracts and will require in any future Contract with any additional Contracting Party that such additional Contracting Party maintain rates and charges for its water and sewer system sufficient to pay the additional Contracting Party's obligations secured by and made payable from the revenues derived from the operation of its water and sewer system.

(e) Escrow Agreement. The Authorized Officer shall approve, execute and deliver an appropriate escrow agreement with a qualified and properly chartered trust institution. Proceeds of the Bonds required to be deposited under an escrow agreement shall be disposed of and released in accordance with TWDB Rules Relating to Financial Programs or as otherwise authorized and directed by the TWDB.

(f) Environmental Indemnification. The Issuer agrees to indemnify, hold harmless and protect the TWDB from any and all claims, causes of action or damages to the person or property of third parties arising from the sampling, analysis, transport and/or removal and disposition of any contaminated sewage sludge, contaminated sediments and/or contaminated media that may be generated by the Issuer, its contractors, consultants, agents, officials and employees as a result of activities relating to the project to the extent permitted by law.

(g) Special Covenants. Until the Bonds have been redeemed, paid or defeased, the Issuer will (i) implement any water conservation program required by the Board of the TWDB, (ii) comply with any special conditions specified by the Board of the TWDB in an environmental determination, (iii) maintain current, accurate and complete records and accounts necessary to demonstrate compliance with generally accepted government accounting standards and other financial assistance related legal and contractual provisions, (iv) immediately upon closing and delivery of the Bonds, the Issuer shall pay to the TWDB a 1.85% origination charge with respect to the Bonds calculated pursuant to the rules of the TWDB and (v) all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors and subcontractors for projects for which Bond proceeds will be used shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on projects of a similar character in the locality in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, and the U.S. Department of Labor's implementing regulations, and all project related contracts will mandate compliance with said Act.

(h) Collateral Requirements. The Issuer agrees that all uninvested and uninsured funds held pursuant to this Resolution shall be managed and collateralized as required by the Public Funds Collateral Act, Chapter 2257, Texas Government Code, as amended.

Section 33. EXPIRATION OF AUTHORIZATION. The authority of the Authorized Officer to sell the Bonds as described in Section 2(b) of this Resolution shall expire on the one-year anniversary date of the adoption of this Resolution by the Board.

Section 34. REPEAL OF CONFLICTING RESOLUTIONS. All resolutions and all parts of any resolutions which are in conflict or inconsistent with this Resolution are hereby repealed and shall be of no further force or effect to the extent of such conflict or inconsistency.

CERTIFICATE OF GENERAL MANAGER

CERTIFICATE OF GENERAL MANAGER

I, the undersigned General Manager of the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer"), acting pursuant to the authority granted to me by resolution of the Board of Directors of the Issuer adopted on August 24, 2011 (the "Resolution") relating to the issuance of Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Bonds") hereby find, determine and commit on behalf of the Issuer to sell and deliver the Bonds to the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB") on the following terms:

1. The Bonds are hereby sold and shall be delivered to, and shall be initially registered in the name of, the TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD, for cash at a price of par less an origination fee paid to the TWDB of \$685,962.00.

2. The principal amount of the Bonds shall be \$37,765,000.

3. The Bonds shall be dated September 15, 2011, shall be numbered from R-1 upwards and shall mature and bear interest from their date of delivery to TWDB (i.e., the Date of Issuance) as follows:

MATURITY DATE <u>(February 1)</u>	PRINCIPAL <u>AMOUNT(\$)</u>	INTEREST <u>RATE(%)</u>
2014	290,000	0.000
2015	305,000	0.300
2016	1,195,000	0.550
2017	1,235,000	0.850
2018	1,280,000	1.200
2019	1,330,000	1.450
2020	1,385,000	1.700
2021	1,445,000	1.950
2022	1,510,000	2.100
2023	1,575,000	2.300
2024	1,650,000	2.450
2025	1,735,000	2.600
2026	1,815,000	2.700
2027	1,905,000	2.800
2028	2,005,000	2.950
2029	2,815,000	3.050
2030	2,935,000	3.150
2031	3,065,000	3.200
2032	3,200,000	3.250
2033	745,000	3.350
2034	785,000	3.400
2035	825,000	3.500
2036	865,000	3.550
2037	910,000	3.550
2038	960,000	3.550

4. Interest on the Bonds shall be payable February 1 and August 1 of each year, commencing February 1, 2012.

5. The Bonds scheduled to mature on and after February 1, 2023, shall be redeemable prior to their scheduled maturities, in whole or in part, and, if in part, in inverse order of maturity, at the option of the Issuer, on February 1, 2022 or on any date thereafter, for the principal amount thereof plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption, and without premium.

6. The Issuer will maintain rates and charges to the "Contracting Parties" (as defined in the Resolution) in amounts sufficient to meet the debt service requirements on the Bonds and other obligations of the Issuer that are supported by the contract payments of the Contracting Parties.

7. Immediately upon closing and delivery of the Bonds, the Issuer shall pay to the TWDB a 1.85% origination charge with respect to the Bonds calculated pursuant to the rules of the TWDB.

8. The Issuer will not discontinue the use of DTC without giving prior written notice to TWDB.

9. The Issuer hereby creates and establishes and shall maintain on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Series 2011A Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Construction Fund" for use by the Issuer for payment of all lawful costs associated with the acquisition and construction of the Project as hereinbefore provided. Upon payment of all such costs, any moneys remaining on deposit in said Fund shall be transferred to the Interest and Sinking Fund. Amounts so deposited to the Interest and Sinking Fund shall be used in the manner described in Section 32(b) of the Resolution.

10. The Bonds shall be substantially in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A.

11. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds shall come from and be used and deposited as follows:

Sources of Funds:	Total (\$)
Principal Amount of Bonds	37,765,000.00
TOTAL SOURCES	37,765,000.00
Uses of Funds:	
TWDB origination fee	685,962.00
Costs of Issuance	555,000.00
Construction Fund	32,313,823.80
Capitalized interest	2,076,111.94
Reserve Fund	2,134,102.26
TOTAL USES	37,765,000.00

[The balance of this page is intentionally left blank.]

Witness my hand this _____.

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

J. Kevin Ward
General Manager

EXHIBIT A

NO. R-	UNITED STATES OF AMERICA STATE OF TEXAS TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS	PRINCIPAL AMOUNT \$ _____
	DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BOND, SERIES 2011A	

<u>INTEREST RATE</u>	<u>DATE OF DELIVERY</u>	<u>MATURITY DATE</u>	<u>CUSIP NO.</u>
----------------------	-------------------------	----------------------	------------------

October 6, 2011

REGISTERED OWNER:

PRINCIPAL AMOUNT: DOLLARS

ON THE MATURITY DATE specified above, the TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS (the "Issuer"), being a governmental agency, and body corporate and politic of the State of Texas, hereby promises to pay to the Registered Owner set forth above, or registered assigns (hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount set forth above, and to pay interest thereon from the Date of Delivery as set forth above, on February 1, 2012 and semiannually thereafter on each February 1 and August 1 to the maturity date specified above, or the date of redemption prior to maturity, at the interest rate per annum specified above, calculated on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months; except that if this Bond is required to be authenticated and the date of its authentication is later than the first Record Date (hereinafter defined), such principal amount shall bear interest from the interest payment date next preceding the date of authentication, unless such date of authentication is after any Record Date but on or before the next following interest payment date, in which case such principal amount shall bear interest from such next following interest payment date; provided, however, that if on the date of authentication hereof the interest on the Bond or Bonds, if any, for which this Bond is being exchanged or converted from is due but has not been paid, then this Bond shall bear interest from the date to which such interest has been paid in full.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption prior to maturity, at the principal corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Dallas, Texas, which is the "Paying Agent/Registrar" for this Bond. The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof on each interest payment date by check or draft, dated as of such interest payment date, drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Issuer required by the Resolution authorizing the issuance of this Bond (the "Bond Resolution") to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check or draft shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner hereof, at its address as it appeared on the fifteenth calendar day of the month next preceding each such date (the "Record Date") on the Registration Books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described; provided, however, that for so long as the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB") is the registered owner of the Bonds, all payments of principal and interest will be made in wire transfer form at no cost to the TWDB. In addition, interest may be paid by

such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Authority. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each owner of a Bond appearing on the Registration Books at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

ANY ACCRUED INTEREST due at maturity or upon the redemption of this Bond prior to maturity as provided herein shall be paid to the registered owner upon presentation and surrender of this Bond for redemption and payment at the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Issuer covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that on or before each principal payment date, interest payment date, and accrued interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar, from the "Interest and Redemption Fund" created by the Bond Resolution, the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Bonds, when due.

IF THE DATE for the payment of the principal of or interest on this Bond shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

THIS BOND is one of a Series of Bonds dated September 15, 2011, authorized in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas in the principal amount of \$37,765,000, IN ORDER TO OBTAIN FUNDS TO PAY THE COSTS OF THE ACQUISITION AND CONSTRUCTION OF IMPROVEMENTS AND EXTENSIONS TO THE DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM.

ON FEBRUARY 1, 2022, or on any date thereafter, the Bonds of this Series may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, at the option of the Authority, with funds derived from any available and lawful source, as a whole, or in part in inverse order of maturity, and, if in part, the particular Bonds to be redeemed shall be selected and designated by the Authority, at the redemption price of the principal amount, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

AT LEAST 30 days prior to the date fixed for any redemption of Bonds or portions thereof prior to maturity a written notice of such redemption shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the registered owner of each Bond to be redeemed at its address as it appeared on the day such notice of redemption is mailed and to major securities depositories, national bond rating agencies and bond information services; provided, however, that the failure of the registered owner to receive such notice, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond. By the date fixed for any such redemption, due provision shall be made with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed. If such written notice of redemption is sent and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided above, the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed thereby automatically shall be treated as redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, and they shall not bear interest after the date fixed for redemption, and they shall not be regarded as being outstanding except for the right of the registered

owner to receive the redemption price from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000, at the written request of the registered owner, and in aggregate amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Issuer, all as provided in the Bond Resolution.

IF AT THE TIME OF MAILING of notice of optional redemption there shall not have either been deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent immediately available funds sufficient to redeem all the Bonds called for redemption, such notice must state that it is conditional, and is subject to the deposit of the redemption moneys with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent at or prior to the redemption date, and such notice shall be of no effect unless such moneys are so deposited on or prior to the redemption date. If such redemption is not effectuated, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, within 5 days thereafter, give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given that such moneys were not so received and shall rescind the redemption.

ALL BONDS OF THIS SERIES are issuable solely as fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, in the denomination of any integral multiple of \$5,000. As provided in the Bond Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be assigned, transferred, converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, having the same denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000 as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, all in accordance with the form and procedures set forth in the Bond Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any integral multiple of \$5,000 to the assignee or assignees in whose name or names this Bond or any such portion or portions hereof is or are to be registered. The form of Assignment printed or endorsed on this Bond may be executed by the registered owner to evidence the assignment hereof, but such method is not exclusive, and other instruments of assignment satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar may be used to evidence the assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof from time to time by the registered owner. The Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable standard or customary fees and charges for assigning, transferring, converting and exchanging any Bond or portion thereof will be paid by the Issuer. In any circumstance, any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto shall be paid by the one requesting such assignment, transfer, conversion or exchange, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion, or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date, or, (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 30 days prior to its redemption date.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is changed by the Issuer, resigns, or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Issuer has covenanted in the Bond Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Bonds.

IT IS HEREBY certified, recited, and covenanted that this Bond has been duly and validly authorized, issued, sold, and delivered; that all acts, conditions, and things required or proper to be

performed, exist, and be done precedent to or in the authorization, issuance, and delivery of this Bond have been performed, existed, and been done in accordance with law; that this Bond and other parity bonds, are special obligations of the Issuer payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the "Pledged Revenues", as defined in the Bond Resolution, which include payments and amounts derived by the Issuer from various contracts styled "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract," between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas.

THE ISSUER has reserved the right, subject to the restrictions stated or referred to in the Bond Resolution, to issue additional parity revenue bonds which also may be made payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues.

THE ISSUER also has reserved the right to amend the Bond Resolution with the approval of the owners of a majority in principal amount of all outstanding bonds secured by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution.

THE REGISTERED OWNER hereof shall never have the right to demand payment of this Bond or the interest hereon from taxes or from any source whatsoever other than specified in the Bond Resolution.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Bond Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Bond Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the governing body of the Issuer, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Bond Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Issuer.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this Bond to be signed with the manual or facsimile signature of the President of the Board of Directors of the Issuer and countersigned with the manual or facsimile signature of the Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, and has caused the official seal of the Issuer to be duly impressed, or placed in facsimile, on this Bond.

Secretary, Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas

President, Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas

(SEAL)

FORM OF PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

(To be executed if this Bond is not accompanied by an
executed Registration Certificate of the Comptroller
of Public Accounts of the State of Texas)

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Bond Resolution described in the text of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion or replacement of, or in exchange for, a bond, bonds, or a portion of a bond or bonds of a Series which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Dated

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY,
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
Paying Agent/Registrar

By _____
Authorized Representative

FORM OF ASSIGNMENT

ASSIGNMENT

For value received, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

Please insert Social Security or Taxpayer
Identification Number of Transferee

(Please print or typewrite name and address,
including zip code of Transferee)

the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints _____, attorney, to register the transfer of the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature Guaranteed:

NOTICE: Signature(s) must be guaranteed by an eligible guarantor institution participating in a securities transfer association recognized signature guarantee program.

NOTICE: The signature above must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears upon the front of this Bond in every particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatsoever.

FORM OF COMPTROLLER'S REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE: REGISTER NO.

I hereby certify that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity, and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and that this Bond has been registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Witness my signature and seal this

Comptroller of Public Accounts
of the State of Texas

(COMPTROLLER'S SEAL)

APPENDIX C

FORM OF OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL

Proposed Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel

An opinion in substantially the following form will be delivered by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel, upon the delivery of the Bonds, assuming no material changes in facts or law.

**TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS
DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM
REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2011A
DATED SEPTEMBER 15, 2011**

AS BOND COUNSEL FOR THE ISSUER (the "Issuer") of the Bonds described above (the "Bonds"), we have examined into the legality and validity of the Bonds, which mature and bear interest from the dates specified in the text of the Bonds, until maturity or redemption, at the rates and payable on the dates as stated in the text of the Bonds, with the Bonds being subject to redemption prior to maturity, all as provided in the resolution of the Issuer authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the "Bond Resolution").

WE HAVE EXAMINED the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, certified copies of the proceedings of the Issuer and other documents authorizing and relating to the issuance of said Bonds, including one of the executed Bonds (Bond Number R-1).

BASED ON SAID EXAMINATION, it is our opinion that the Bonds have been authorized, issued and duly delivered in accordance with law; and that except as may be limited by laws applicable to the Issuer relating to federal bankruptcy laws and any other similar laws affecting the rights of creditors of political subdivisions generally, which rights may be limited by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion, (i) the covenants and agreements in the Bond Resolution constitute valid and binding special obligations of the Issuer, which, together with other parity bonds, are secured by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the "Pledged Revenues", as defined in the Bond Resolution, which include the "Net Revenues" of the Issuer's Denton Creek regional wastewater treatment "System", as defined in the Bond Resolution, and includes payments and amounts derived by the Issuer from various contracts styled "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract," between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas and (ii) said contracts are authorized by law, have been duly executed, are valid, and are legally binding upon and enforceable by the parties thereto in accordance with their terms and provisions.

THE ISSUER has reserved the right, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution, to issue additional parity revenue bonds which also may be payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of, the aforesaid Pledged Revenues.

THE ISSUER also has reserved the right to amend the Bond Resolution with the approval of the owners of a majority of the principal amount of all outstanding bonds payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution.

THE REGISTERED OWNERS of the Bonds shall never have the right to demand payment of the principal thereof or interest thereon out of any funds raised or to be raised from taxes levied by the Issuer or from any source whatsoever other than specified in the Bond Resolution.

IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION, except as discussed below, that the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under the statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date of this opinion. We are further of the opinion that the Bonds are not "specified private activity bonds" and that, accordingly, interest on the Bonds will not be included as an individual or corporate alternative minimum tax preference item under Section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). In expressing the aforementioned opinions, we have relied on, and assume compliance by the Issuer with, certain covenants regarding the use and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and the use of the property financed therewith. We call your attention to the fact that if such representations are determined to be inaccurate or upon failure by the Issuer to comply with such covenants, interest on the Bonds may become includable in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds.

EXCEPT AS STATED ABOVE, we express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of acquiring, carrying, owning or disposing of the Bonds.

WE CALL YOUR ATTENTION TO THE FACT that the interest on tax-exempt obligations, such as the Bonds is included in a corporation's alternative minimum taxable income for purposes of determining the alternative minimum tax imposed on corporations by Section 55 of the Code.

WE EXPRESS NO OPINION as to any insurance policies issued with respect to the payments due for the principal of and interest on the Bonds, nor as to any such insurance policies issued in the future.

OUR SOLE ENGAGEMENT in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is as Bond Counsel for the Issuer, and, in that capacity, we have been engaged by the Issuer for the sole purpose of rendering an opinion with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and with respect to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes, and for no other reason or purpose. The foregoing opinions represent our legal judgment based upon a review of existing legal authorities that we deem relevant to render such opinions and are not a guarantee of a result. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the Contracting Parties, or the adequacy of the Pledged Revenues to be derived from the Contract, and have not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the marketability of the Bonds and have relied solely on certificates executed by officials of the Issuer as to the current outstanding indebtedness of, and sufficiency of the Pledged Revenues.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of a result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (the "Service"). Rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above that we deem relevant to such opinions. The Service has an ongoing audit program to determine compliance with rules that relate to whether interest on state or local obligations is includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. No assurance can be given whether or not the Service will commence an audit of the Bonds. If an audit is commenced, in accordance with its current published procedures the Service is likely to treat the Issuer as the taxpayer. We observe that the Issuer has covenanted not to take any action, or omit to take any action within its control, that if taken or omitted, respectively, may result in the treatment of interest on the Bonds as includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

Respectfully,

APPENDIX D
DRAW SCHEDULE

Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System - Draw Schedule for 2009 and 2010 IUP Loans

TWDB Loans		\$23,765,000		\$14,000,000		\$37,765,000		24 month	
		Monthly	Cumulative	Monthly	Cumulative	Total	Total	Spending	
Month/Year		Cost	Cost	Cost	Cost	Monthly Draws	Cumulative Draws	Exception Test	
Oct-11	1	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 1,945,200	\$ 1,945,200	\$ 5,451,200	\$ 5,451,200		
Nov-11	2	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ -	\$ 1,945,200	\$ -	\$ 5,451,200		
Dec-11	3	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 2,714,900	\$ 4,660,100	\$ 2,714,900	\$ 8,166,100		
Jan-12	4	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ -	\$ 4,660,100	\$ -	\$ 8,166,100		
Feb-12	5	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ -	\$ 4,660,100	\$ -	\$ 8,166,100		
Mar-12	6	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 369,500	\$ 5,029,600	\$ 369,500	\$ 8,535,600	22.60%	10.00%
Apr-12	7	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 129,000	\$ 5,158,600	\$ 129,000	\$ 8,664,600		
May-12	8	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 190,000	\$ 5,348,600	\$ 190,000	\$ 8,854,600		
Jun-12	9	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 950,000	\$ 6,298,600	\$ 950,000	\$ 9,804,600		
Jul-12	10	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 232,500	\$ 6,531,100	\$ 232,500	\$ 10,037,100		
Aug-12	11	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 204,000	\$ 6,735,100	\$ 204,000	\$ 10,241,100		
Sep-12	12	\$ -	\$ 3,506,000	\$ 177,400	\$ 6,912,500	\$ 177,400	\$ 10,418,500	27.59%	45.00%
Oct-12	13	\$ 285,000	\$ 3,791,000	\$ 1,162,000	\$ 8,074,500	\$ 1,447,000	\$ 11,865,500		
Nov-12	14	\$ 1,950,000	\$ 5,741,000	\$ 508,000	\$ 8,582,500	\$ 2,458,000	\$ 14,323,500		
Dec-12	15	\$ 1,369,800	\$ 7,110,800	\$ 423,000	\$ 9,005,500	\$ 1,792,800	\$ 16,116,300		
Jan-13	16	\$ 2,695,000	\$ 9,805,800	\$ 565,000	\$ 9,570,500	\$ 3,260,000	\$ 19,376,300		
Feb-13	17	\$ 1,262,400	\$ 11,068,200	\$ 548,000	\$ 10,118,500	\$ 1,810,400	\$ 21,186,700		
Mar-13	18	\$ 772,000	\$ 11,840,200	\$ 403,600	\$ 10,522,100	\$ 1,175,600	\$ 22,362,300	59.21%	75.00%
Apr-13	19	\$ 1,732,000	\$ 13,572,200	\$ 365,000	\$ 10,887,100	\$ 2,097,000	\$ 24,459,300		
May-13	20	\$ 2,008,000	\$ 15,580,200	\$ 459,000	\$ 11,346,100	\$ 2,467,000	\$ 26,926,300		
Jun-13	21	\$ 1,532,800	\$ 17,113,000	\$ 425,500	\$ 11,771,600	\$ 1,958,300	\$ 28,884,600		
Jul-13	22	\$ 1,510,000	\$ 18,623,000	\$ 500,600	\$ 12,272,200	\$ 2,010,600	\$ 30,895,200		
Aug-13	23	\$ 1,560,000	\$ 20,183,000	\$ 358,800	\$ 12,631,000	\$ 1,918,800	\$ 32,814,000		
Sep-13	24	\$ 1,206,000	\$ 21,389,000	\$ 375,500	\$ 13,006,500	\$ 1,581,500	\$ 34,395,500	91.08%	100.00%
Oct-13	25	\$ 1,117,000	\$ 22,506,000	\$ 354,000	\$ 13,360,500	\$ 1,471,000	\$ 35,866,500		
Nov-13	26	\$ 1,259,000	\$ 23,765,000	\$ 325,500	\$ 13,686,000	\$ 1,584,500	\$ 37,451,000		
Dec-13	27			\$ 225,000	\$ 13,911,000	\$ 225,000	\$ 37,676,000		
Jan-14	28			\$ 89,000	\$ 14,000,000	\$ 89,000	\$ 37,765,000	100.00%	
		\$23,765,000		\$14,000,000		\$ 37,765,000			

TAB 3

RESOLUTION NO. R-1329

CERTIFICATE FOR RESOLUTION AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE, SALE, AND DELIVERY OF TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS AND APPROVING AND AUTHORIZING INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES RELATING THERETO

THE STATE OF TEXAS
TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

I, the undersigned, Secretary of the Board of Directors of Trinity River Authority of Texas, being the official keeper of the minutes and records of said Authority, hereby certify as follows:

1. The Board of Directors of said Authority convened in REGULAR MEETING ON THE 24TH DAY OF AUGUST, 2011, at the designated meeting place, and the roll was called of the duly constituted officers and members of said Board, to-wit:

Linda D. Timmerman, Ed.D., President
Harold L. Barnard, Vice President
Howard S. Slobodin, Secretary
Patricia Carlson
William W. Collins, Jr.
Christina Melton Crain
Michael Cronin
Steve Cronin
Amanda Davis
Ronald Goldman
Martha A. Hernandez
John W. Jenkins
Keith W. Kidd

Jess A. Laird
Nancy E. Lavinski
David B. Leonard
Andrew Martinez
Kevin Maxwell
Dennis "Joe" McCleskey
James W. Neale
Manny Rachal
Amir Rupani
Ana Laura Saucedo
Shirley K. Seale
J. Carol Spillars
Kim C. Wyatt

and, at the time of adoption of the resolution hereinafter described, all of said persons were present and voted, except the following absentees: Collins, Timmerman, David & Spillars.
Whereupon, a quorum being present, the following was transacted at said Meeting: a written

RESOLUTION AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE, SALE, AND DELIVERY OF TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS AND APPROVING AND AUTHORIZING INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES RELATING THERETO

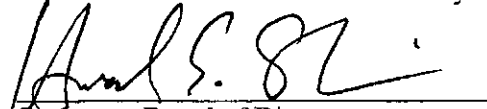
was duly introduced for the consideration of said Board and duly read. It was then duly moved and seconded that said Resolution be adopted; and, after due discussion, said motion, carrying with it the adoption of said resolution, prevailed and carried with all members present voting "AYE" except the following:

NAY: None.

ABSTAIN: None.

2. That a true, full, and correct copy of the aforesaid Resolution adopted at the Meeting described in the above and foregoing paragraph is attached to and follows this Certificate; that said Resolution has been duly recorded in said Board's minutes of said Meeting; that the above and foregoing paragraph is a true, full, and correct excerpt from said Board's minutes of said Meeting pertaining to the adoption of said Resolution; that the persons named in the above and foregoing paragraph are the duly chosen, qualified, and acting officers and members of said Board as indicated therein; and that each of the officers and members of said Board was duly and sufficiently notified officially and personally, in advance, of the time, place, and purpose of the aforesaid Meeting, and that said Resolution would be introduced and considered for adoption at said Meeting; and that said Meeting was open to the public, and public notice of the time, place, and purpose of said Meeting was given, all as required by Chapter 551, Texas Government Code.

SIGNED AND SEALED the 24th day of August, 2011.


Secretary, Board of Directors,
Trinity River Authority of Texas

(AUTHORITY SEAL)

RESOLUTION NO. R-1329

RESOLUTION AUTHORIZING THE ISSUANCE, SALE, AND DELIVERY OF TRINITY RIVER
AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM
REVENUE BONDS AND APPROVING AND AUTHORIZING INSTRUMENTS AND PROCEDURES
RELATING THERETO

THE STATE OF TEXAS :
TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS :

WHEREAS, Trinity River Authority of Texas, is an agency and political subdivision of the State of Texas, being a conservation and reclamation district created and functioning under Article 16, Section 59, of the Texas Constitution, pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 518, Acts of the 54th Legislature, Regular Session, 1955, as amended (the "Authority Act"); and

WHEREAS, a "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract" (the "Base Contract"), dated as of October 28, 1987, has been duly executed between Trinity River Authority of Texas (hereinafter called the "Issuer" or the "Authority") and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, and Roanoke, Texas, with respect to the acquisition and construction by the Issuer, for the benefit of said cities, of a Denton Creek regional wastewater treatment "System", as described and defined in the Base Contract; and

WHEREAS, as permitted by the Base Contract, and each subsequent supplemental contract, the Issuer has entered into the following supplemental contracts:

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Supplemental Contract (City of Southlake and Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1)" (the "First Supplemental Contract"), dated as of April 27, 1988;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Second Supplemental Contract (City of Keller, Texas)" (the "Second Supplemental Contract"), dated as of April 22, 1992;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Third Supplemental Contract (Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3)" (the "Third Supplemental Contract"), dated as of August 24, 1994;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fourth Supplemental Contract (Town of Flower Mound, Texas)" (the "Fourth Supplemental Contract"), dated as of March 1, 2000;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fifth Supplemental Contract (Town of Westlake, Texas)" (the "Fifth Supplemental Contract"), dated as of March 1, 2000;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Northlake, Texas)" (the "Sixth Supplemental Contract"), dated as of December 1, 2001;

"Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Seventh Supplemental Contract (Town of Argyle, Texas)", dated as of December 6, 2006 and amended as of December 5, 2007 (the "Seventh Supplemental Contract"); and

WHEREAS, the Base Contract and the First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth and Seventh Supplemental Contracts are hereby referred to and adopted for all purposes, the same as if they had been set forth in their entirety in this Resolution; and

WHEREAS, as permitted by said contracts the Issuer has duly issued the following series of bonds:

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 1988 (the "Series 1988 Bonds"), which issue is no longer outstanding;

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 1993 (the "Series 1993 Bonds"), which issue is no longer outstanding;

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 1996 (the "Series 1996 Bonds"), which issue is no longer outstanding;

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2000 (the "Series 2000 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement and Refunding Bonds, Series 2003 (the "Series 2003 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement Bonds, Series 2006 (the "Series 2006 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement Bonds, Series 2007 (the "Series 2007 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2008 (the "Series 2008 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2009 (the "Series 2009 Bonds");

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011 (the "Series 2011 Bonds"); and

WHEREAS, the Issuer is adopting at the same meeting at which this Resolution is adopted, a resolution authorizing the issuance its Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2011 (the "Series 2011 Refunding Bonds") on a parity with the aforementioned bonds and the proposed Bonds, for the purpose of obtaining funds to refund certain maturities of the Series 2000 Bonds and Series 2003 Bonds; and

WHEREAS, the resolutions of the Issuer authorizing the issuance of the Series 2000 Bonds, the Series 2003 Bonds, the Series 2006 Bonds, the Series 2007 Bonds, the Series 2008 Bonds, the Series 2009 Bonds, the Series 2011 Bonds and the Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) provide for the issuance of additional parity revenue bonds for the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the System; and

WHEREAS, the Issuer has determined to issue the bonds (the "Bonds") hereinafter authorized on a parity with the Series 2000 Bonds, Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) to be

outstanding after the delivery of the Bonds to obtain funds to acquire and construct improvements and extensions to the System; and

WHEREAS, the Bonds authorized to be issued by this resolution (the "Bond Resolution" or "Resolution") are to be issued and delivered pursuant to the Authority Act, Chapter 30, Texas Water Code, as amended, Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, and other applicable laws; and

WHEREAS, the Base Contract and the First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth, Sixth and Seventh Supplemental Contracts authorize the Issuer to issue the Bonds in the manner and amount and with the security, as hereinafter provided.

THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS, THAT:

Section 1. RECITALS, AMOUNT AND PURPOSE OF THE BONDS. The Board of Directors hereby incorporates the recitals set forth in the preamble hereto as if set forth in full at this place and further finds and determines that said recitals are true and correct. In order to obtain funds to pay for the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System, the Board of Directors hereby authorizes and directs the issuance of revenue bonds of the Issuer, in one or more series, in the aggregate principal amount of not to exceed \$51,800,000.

Section 2. DESIGNATION, DATE, DENOMINATIONS, NUMBERS, MATURITIES AND SALE OF BONDS. (a) Each bond issued pursuant to this Resolution shall, subject to paragraph (b) of this section, be designated: "TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BOND, SERIES ____."

(b) As authorized by Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended, the General Manager of the Issuer is hereby designated as the "Authorized Officer" of the Issuer, and is hereby authorized, appointed, and designated as the officer or employee of the Issuer authorized to act on behalf of the Issuer in the selling and delivering of the Bonds and carrying out the other procedures specified in this Resolution, including the use of a book-entry-only system with respect to the Bonds and the execution of an appropriate letter of representations if deemed appropriate, the determining and fixing of the date of the Bonds, any additional or different designation or title by which the Bonds shall be known, the price at which the Bonds will be sold, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the amount of each maturity of principal thereof, the due date of each such maturity (not exceeding forty years from the date of the Bonds), the rate of interest to be borne by each such maturity, the interest payment dates and periods, the dates, price and terms upon and at which the Bonds shall be subject to redemption prior to due date or maturity at the option of the Issuer, any mandatory sinking fund redemption provisions, procuring municipal bond insurance, and approving modifications to this Resolution and executing such instruments, documents and agreements as may be necessary with respect thereto, if it is determined that such insurance would be financially desirable and advantageous, and all other matters relating to the issuance, sale and delivery of the Bonds. The Authorized Officer, acting for and on behalf of the Issuer, is authorized to arrange for the Bonds to be sold, in one or more issues, at negotiated sale to the Texas Water Development Board, at such price, in an amount not to exceed the aggregate principal amount set forth above, with such maturities of principal, with such interest rates, and with such optional and mandatory sinking fund redemption provisions, if any, and other matters, as shall be mutually acceptable. The Bonds shall not be sold at a price less than 95% of the initial aggregate principal amount thereof plus accrued interest thereon from their date to their delivery, and no Bond shall bear interest at a rate greater than 10% per annum. The Authorized Officer is further authorized, for and on behalf of the Issuer, to approve any notice of sale, bidding forms, official statement, and any supplements thereto relating to the Bonds and referred to in any such certification. It is further provided, however, that, notwithstanding the foregoing provisions, the Bonds shall not be delivered unless,

prior to their delivery, the Bonds have been rated by a nationally recognized rating agency for municipal long term obligations, as required by said Chapter 1371, Texas Government Code, as amended.

Section 3. CHARACTERISTICS OF THE BONDS. Registration, Transfer, Conversion and Exchange; Authentication. (a) The Issuer shall keep or cause to be kept at the principal corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") books or records for the registration of the transfer, conversion and exchange of the Bonds (the "Registration Books"), and the Issuer hereby appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar as its registrar and transfer agent to keep such books or records and make such registrations of transfers, conversions and exchanges under such reasonable regulations as the Issuer and Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe; and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall make such registrations, transfers, conversions and exchanges as herein provided. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall obtain and record in the Registration Books the address of the registered owner of each Bond to which payments with respect to the Bonds shall be mailed, as herein provided; but it shall be the duty of each registered owner to notify the Paying Agent/Registrar in writing of the address to which payments shall be mailed, and such interest payments shall not be mailed unless such notice has been given. The Issuer shall have the right to inspect the Registration Books during regular business hours of the Paying Agent/Registrar, but otherwise the Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep the Registration Books confidential and, unless otherwise required by law, shall not permit their inspection by any other entity. The Issuer shall pay the Paying Agent/Registrar's standard or customary fees and charges for making such registration, transfer, conversion, exchange and delivery of a substitute Bond or Bonds. Registration of assignments, transfers, conversions and exchanges of Bonds shall be made in the manner provided and with the effect stated in the FORM OF BOND set forth in this Resolution. Each substitute Bond shall bear a letter and/or number to distinguish it from each other Bond.

Except as provided in Section 3(c) hereof, an authorized representative of the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, before the delivery of any such Bond, date and manually sign said Bond, and no such Bond shall be deemed to be issued or outstanding unless such Bond is so executed. The Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall cancel all paid Bonds and Bonds surrendered for conversion and exchange. No additional ordinances, orders, or resolutions need be passed or adopted by the governing body of the Issuer or any other body or person so as to accomplish the foregoing conversion and exchange of any Bond or portion thereof, and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall provide for the printing, execution, and delivery of the substitute Bonds in the manner prescribed herein, and said Bonds shall be of type composition printed on paper with lithographed or steel engraved borders of customary weight and strength. Pursuant to Subchapter D, Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code, the duty of conversion and exchange of Bonds as aforesaid is hereby imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar, and, upon the execution of said Certificate, the converted and exchanged Bond shall be valid, incontestable, and enforceable in the same manner and with the same effect as the Bonds which initially were issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, approved by the Attorney General, and registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts.

(b) Payment of Bonds and Interest. The Issuer hereby further appoints the Paying Agent/Registrar to act as the paying agent for paying the principal of and interest on the Bonds, all as provided in this Resolution. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall keep proper records of all payments made by the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar with respect to the Bonds, and of all conversions and exchanges of Bonds, and all replacements of Bonds, as provided in this Resolution. However, in the event of a nonpayment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for thirty (30) days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Issuer. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five (5) business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner appearing on the Registration Books at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

(c) In General. The Bonds (i) shall be issued in fully registered form, without interest coupons, with the principal of and interest on such Bonds to be payable only to the registered owners thereof, (ii) may or shall be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities (notice of which shall be given to the Paying Agent/Registrar by the Issuer at least 50 days prior to any such redemption date), (iii) transferred and assigned, (iv) may be converted and exchanged for other Bonds, (v) shall have the characteristics, (vi) shall be signed, sealed, executed and authenticated, (vii) the principal of and interest on the Bonds shall be payable, and (viii) shall be administered and the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Issuer shall have certain duties and responsibilities with respect to the Bonds, all as provided, and in the manner and to the effect as required or indicated, in the FORM OF BOND set forth in this Resolution. The Bonds initially issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution are not required to be, and shall not be, authenticated by the Paying Agent/Registrar, but on each substitute Bond issued in conversion of and exchange for any Bond or Bonds issued under this Resolution the Paying Agent/Registrar shall execute the PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE, in the form set forth in the FORM OF BOND.

(d) Substitute Paying Agent/Registrar. The Issuer covenants with the registered owners of the Bonds that at all times while the Bonds are outstanding the Issuer will provide a competent and legally qualified bank, trust company, financial institution, or other agency to act as and perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds under this Resolution, and that the Paying Agent/Registrar will be one entity. The Issuer reserves the right to, and may, at its option, change the Paying Agent/Registrar upon not less than 120 days written notice to the Paying Agent/Registrar, to be effective not later than 60 days prior to the next principal or interest payment date after such notice. In the event that the entity at any time acting as Paying Agent/Registrar (or its successor by merger, acquisition, or other method) should resign or otherwise cease to act as such, the Issuer covenants that promptly it will appoint a competent and legally qualified bank, trust company, financial institution, or other agency to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Resolution. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the previous Paying Agent/Registrar promptly shall transfer and deliver the Registration Books (or a copy thereof), along with all other pertinent books and records relating to the Bonds, to the new Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Issuer. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the Issuer promptly will cause a written notice thereof to be sent by the new Paying Agent/Registrar to each registered owner of the Bonds, by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, which notice also shall give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar. By accepting the position and performing as such, each Paying Agent/Registrar shall be deemed to have agreed to the provisions of this Resolution, and a certified copy of this Resolution shall be delivered to each Paying Agent/Registrar.

(e) Book-Entry Only System. The Bonds issued in exchange for the Bonds initially issued to the purchaser specified herein shall be initially issued in the form of a separate single fully registered Bond for each of the maturities thereof. Upon initial issuance, the ownership of each such Bond shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company of New York ("DTC"), and except as provided in subsection (f) hereof, all of the outstanding Bonds shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC.

With respect to Bonds registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation to any securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations on whose behalf DTC was created ("DTC Participant") to hold securities to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among DTC Participants or to any person on behalf of whom such a DTC Participant holds an interest in the Bonds. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co. or any DTC Participant with respect to any ownership interest in the Bonds, (ii) the delivery to any DTC Participant or any other person, other than a registered owner of Bonds, as shown on the Registration Books, of any notice with respect to the Bonds, or (iii) the payment to any DTC Participant

or any other person, other than a registered owner of Bonds, as shown in the Registration Books of any amount with respect to principal of or interest on the Bonds. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, the Issuer and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be entitled to treat and consider the person in whose name each Bond is registered in the Registration Books as the absolute owner of such Bond for the purpose of payment of principal and interest with respect to such Bond, for the purpose of registering transfers with respect to such Bond, and for all other purposes whatsoever. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall pay all principal of and interest on the Bonds only to or upon the order of the registered owners, as shown in the Registration Books as provided in this Resolution, or their respective attorneys duly authorized in writing, and all such payments shall be valid and effective to fully satisfy and discharge the Issuer's obligations with respect to payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to the extent of the sum or sums so paid. No person other than a registered owner, as shown in the Registration Books, shall receive a Bond certificate evidencing the obligation of the Issuer to make payments of principal and interest pursuant to this Resolution. Upon delivery by DTC to the Paying Agent/Registrar of written notice to the effect that DTC has determined to substitute a new nominee in place of Cede & Co., and subject to the provisions in this Resolution with respect to interest checks being mailed to the registered owner at the close of business on the Record date, the words "Cede & Co." in this Resolution shall refer to such new nominee of DTC.

(f) Successor Securities Depository; Transfers Outside Book-Entry Only System. In the event that the Issuer determines that DTC is incapable of discharging its responsibilities described herein and in the representation letter of the Issuer to DTC or that it is in the best interest of the beneficial owners of the Bonds that they be able to obtain certificated Bonds, the Issuer shall (i) appoint a successor securities depository, qualified to act as such under Section 17A of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, notify DTC and DTC Participants of the appointment of such successor securities depository and transfer one or more separate Bonds to such successor securities depository or (ii) notify DTC and DTC Participants of the availability through DTC of Bonds and transfer one or more separate Bonds to DTC Participants having Bonds credited to their DTC accounts. In such event, the Bonds shall no longer be restricted to being registered in the Registration Books in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, but may be registered in the name of the successor securities depository, or its nominee, or in whatever name or names registered owners transferring or exchanging Bonds shall designate, in accordance with the provisions of this Resolution.

(g) Payments to Cede & Co. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, so long as any Bond is registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, all payments with respect to principal of and interest on such Bond and all notices with respect to such Bond shall be made and given, respectively, in the manner provided in the representation letter of the Issuer to DTC.

(h) Notice of Redemption. (i) In addition to the notice of redemption set forth in the FORM OF BOND, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice of redemption of the Bonds by first class mail, postage prepaid at least thirty (30) days prior to a redemption date to each registered securities depository and to any national information service that disseminates redemption notices. In addition, in the event of a redemption caused by an advance refunding of the Bonds, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall send a second notice of redemption to the persons specified in the immediately preceding sentence at least thirty (30) days but not more than ninety (90) days prior to the actual redemption date. Any notice sent to the registered securities depositories or such national information services shall be sent so that they are received at least two (2) days prior to the general mailing or publication date of such notice. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall also send a notice of prepayment or redemption to the Registered Owner of any Bond who has not sent the Bonds in for redemption sixty (60) days after the redemption date.

(ii) Each notice of redemption given by the Paying Agent/Registrar, whether required in the FORM OF BOND or in this Section, shall contain a description of the Bonds to be redeemed including the complete name of the Bonds, the Series, the date of issue, the interest rate, the maturity date, the CUSIP number, the

certificate numbers, the amounts called of each certificate, the publications and mailing date for the notice, the date of redemption, the redemption price, the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar and the address at which the Bonds may be redeemed, including a contact person and telephone number.

(iii) All redemption payments made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the Registered Owners shall include a CUSIP number relating to each amount paid to such Registered Owner.

Section 4. FORM OF BONDS. The form of the Bonds, including the form of Paying Agent/Registrar's Authentication Certificate, the form of Assignment and the form of Registration Certificate of the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas to be attached to the Bonds initially issued and delivered pursuant to this Resolution, shall be, respectively, substantially as follows, with such appropriate variations, omissions, or insertions as are permitted or required by this Resolution.

FORM OF BOND

NO. R-	UNITED STATES OF AMERICA	PRINCIPAL
	STATE OF TEXAS	AMOUNT
	TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS	\$ _____
	DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM	
	REVENUE BOND, SERIES _____	

<u>INTEREST RATE</u>	<u>DATE OF BONDS</u>	<u>MATURITY DATE</u>	<u>CUSIP NO.</u>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	------------------

REGISTERED OWNER:

PRINCIPAL AMOUNT: DOLLARS

ON THE MATURITY DATE specified above, the TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS (the "Issuer"), being a governmental agency, and body corporate and politic of the State of Texas, hereby promises to pay to the Registered Owner set forth above, or registered assigns (hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount set forth above, and to pay interest thereon from the Date of Bonds as set forth above, on _____ 1, _____ and semiannually thereafter on each _____ 1 and _____ 1 to the maturity date specified above, or the date of redemption prior to maturity, at the interest rate per annum specified above, calculated on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months; except that if this Bond is required to be authenticated and the date of its authentication is later than the first Record Date (hereinafter defined), such principal amount shall bear interest from the interest payment date next preceding the date of authentication, unless such date of authentication is after any Record Date but on or before the next following interest payment date, in which case such principal amount shall bear interest from such next following interest payment date; provided, however, that if on the date of authentication hereof the interest on the Bond or Bonds, if any, for which this Bond is being exchanged or converted from is due but has not been paid, then this Bond shall bear interest from the date to which such interest has been paid in full.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption prior to maturity, at the principal corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Dallas, Texas, which is the "Paying Agent/Registrar" for this Bond.

The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof on each interest payment date by check or draft, dated as of such interest payment date, drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Issuer required by the Resolution authorizing the issuance of this Bond (the "Bond Resolution") to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check or draft shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner hereof, at its address as it appeared on the fifteenth calendar day of the month next preceding each such date (the "Record Date") on the Registration Books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described; provided, however, that for so long as the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB") is the registered owner of the Bonds, all payments of principal and interest will be made in wire transfer form at no cost to the TWDB. In addition, interest may be paid by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Authority. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each owner of a Bond appearing on the Registration Books at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

ANY ACCRUED INTEREST due at maturity or upon the redemption of this Bond prior to maturity as provided herein shall be paid to the registered owner upon presentation and surrender of this Bond for redemption and payment at the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Issuer covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that on or before each principal payment date, interest payment date, and accrued interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar, from the "Interest and Redemption Fund" created by the Bond Resolution, the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Bonds, when due.

IF THE DATE for the payment of the principal of or interest on this Bond shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

THIS BOND is one of a Series of Bonds dated _____, authorized in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas in the principal amount of \$_____, IN ORDER TO OBTAIN FUNDS TO PAY THE COSTS OF THE ACQUISITION AND CONSTRUCTION OF IMPROVEMENTS AND EXTENSIONS TO THE DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM.

ON _____, _____, or on any date thereafter, the Bonds of this Series may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, at the option of the Authority, with funds derived from any available and lawful source, as a whole, or in part in inverse order of maturity, and, if in part, the particular Bonds to be redeemed shall be selected and designated by the Authority, at the redemption price of the principal amount, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

AT LEAST 30 days prior to the date fixed for any redemption of Bonds or portions thereof prior to maturity a written notice of such redemption shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the registered owner of each Bond to be redeemed at its address as it

appeared on the day such notice of redemption is mailed and to major securities depositories, national bond rating agencies and bond information services; provided, however, that the failure of the registered owner to receive such notice, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond. By the date fixed for any such redemption, due provision shall be made with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed. If such written notice of redemption is sent and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided above, the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed thereby automatically shall be treated as redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, and they shall not bear interest after the date fixed for redemption, and they shall not be regarded as being outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000, at the written request of the registered owner, and in aggregate amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Issuer, all as provided in the Bond Resolution.

IF AT THE TIME OF MAILING of notice of optional redemption there shall not have either been deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent immediately available funds sufficient to redeem all the Bonds called for redemption, such notice must state that it is conditional, and is subject to the deposit of the redemption moneys with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent at or prior to the redemption date, and such notice shall be of no effect unless such moneys are so deposited on or prior to the redemption date. If such redemption is not effectuated, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, within 5 days thereafter, give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given that such moneys were not so received and shall rescind the redemption.

ALL BONDS OF THIS SERIES are issuable solely as fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, in the denomination of any integral multiple of \$5,000. As provided in the Bond Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be assigned, transferred, converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, having the same denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000 as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, all in accordance with the form and procedures set forth in the Bond Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any integral multiple of \$5,000 to the assignee or assignees in whose name or names this Bond or any such portion or portions hereof is or are to be registered. The form of Assignment printed or endorsed on this Bond may be executed by the registered owner to evidence the assignment hereof, but such method is not exclusive, and other instruments of assignment satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar may be used to evidence the assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof from time to time by the registered owner. The Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable standard or customary fees and charges for assigning, transferring, converting and exchanging any Bond or portion thereof will be paid by the Issuer. In any circumstance, any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto shall be paid by the one requesting such assignment, transfer, conversion or exchange, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion, or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date, or, (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 30 days prior to its redemption date.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is changed by the Issuer, resigns, or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Issuer has covenanted in the Bond Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Bonds.

IT IS HEREBY certified, recited, and covenanted that this Bond has been duly and validly authorized, issued, sold, and delivered; that all acts, conditions, and things required or proper to be performed, exist, and be done precedent to or in the authorization, issuance, and delivery of this Bond have been performed, existed, and been done in accordance with law; that this Bond and other parity bonds, are special obligations of the Issuer payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the "Pledged Revenues", as defined in the Bond Resolution, which include payments and amounts derived by the Issuer from various contracts styled "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract," between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas.

THE ISSUER has reserved the right, subject to the restrictions stated or referred to in the Bond Resolution, to issue additional parity revenue bonds which also may be made payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues.

THE ISSUER also has reserved the right to amend the Bond Resolution with the approval of the owners of a majority in principal amount of all outstanding bonds secured by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution.

THE REGISTERED OWNER hereof shall never have the right to demand payment of this Bond or the interest hereon from taxes or from any source whatsoever other than specified in the Bond Resolution.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Bond Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Bond Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the governing body of the Issuer, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Bond Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Issuer.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this Bond to be signed with the manual or facsimile signature of the President of the Board of Directors of the Issuer and countersigned with the manual or facsimile signature of the Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, and has caused the official seal of the Issuer to be duly impressed, or placed in facsimile, on this Bond.

Secretary, Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas

President, Board of Directors,
Trinity River Authority of Texas

(SEAL)

FORM OF
PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

(To be executed if this Bond is not accompanied by an
executed Registration Certificate of the Comptroller
of Public Accounts of the State of Texas)

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Bond Resolution described in the text of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion or replacement of, or in exchange for, a bond, bonds, or a portion of a bond or bonds of a Series which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Dated

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY,
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
Paying Agent/Registrar

By _____
Authorized Representative

FORM OF ASSIGNMENT

ASSIGNMENT

For value received, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

Please insert Social Security or Taxpayer
Identification Number of Transferee

(Please print or typewrite name and address,
including zip code of Transferee)

the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints _____, attorney, to register the transfer of the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature Guaranteed:

NOTICE: Signature(s) must be guaranteed by an eligible guarantor institution participating in a securities transfer association recognized signature guarantee program.

NOTICE: The signature above must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears upon the front of this Bond in every particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatsoever.

FORM OF REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE OF
THE COMPTROLLER OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS:

COMPTROLLER'S REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE: REGISTER NO.

I hereby certify that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity, and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and that this Bond has been registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Witness my signature and seal this

Comptroller of Public Accounts
of the State of Texas

(COMPTROLLER'S SEAL)

5. DEFINITIONS. The definitions set forth in the preamble hereto are incorporated herein as if set forth in this section. As used in this Resolution the following terms shall have the meanings set forth below, unless the text hereof specifically indicates otherwise:

The terms "Authority" and "Issuer" shall have the meaning set forth in the preamble.

The term "Board" means the Board of Directors of the Issuer, being the governing body of the Issuer and it is further resolved that the declarations and covenants of the Issuer contained in this Resolution are made by, and for and on behalf of the Board and the Issuer, and are binding upon the Board and the Issuer for all purposes.

The terms "Bond Resolution" and "Resolution" mean this resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Issuer on August 24, 2011, authorizing the issuance of the Bonds.

The term "Bonds" means collectively the Bonds authorized by this Resolution, and all substitute bonds exchanged therefor and other substitute bonds as provided for in this Resolution.

The term "Parity Bonds" means collectively (i) the Bonds and (ii) any Series 2000 Bonds, Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009 Bonds, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) which will be outstanding and payable from the Pledged Revenues after the delivery of the Bonds.

The term "Additional Bonds" means the additional parity bonds permitted to be authorized in this Resolution.

The terms "Denton Creek System" and "System" mean all of the Issuer's wastewater reception, treatment, and disposal facilities, as described and defined in the Contracts, serving the Contracting Parties in the area of the watershed or drainage basin of Denton Creek (a tributary of the Trinity River) in Denton and Tarrant Counties, Texas, together with all improvements and additions to and extensions, enlargements, and replacements of such facilities. However, said terms do not include any facilities acquired or constructed by the Issuer with the proceeds from the issuance of "Special Facilities Bonds", which are hereby defined as being revenue obligations of the Issuer which are not issued as Additional Bonds, and which are payable from any source, contract, or revenues whatsoever other than the Pledged Revenues; and Special Facilities Bonds may be issued for any lawful purpose and made payable from any source, contract, or revenues whatsoever other than the Pledged Revenues.

The term "Initial Contracting Parties" means the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, and Roanoke, Texas.

The term "First Supplemental Contracting Parties" means the City of Southlake, Texas, and Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 1 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas (formerly Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas).

The term "Second Supplemental Contracting Party" means the City of Keller, Texas.

The term "Third Supplemental Contracting Party" means Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas (formerly Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas).

The term "Fourth Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Flower Mound, Texas.

The term "Fifth Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Westlake, Texas.

The term "Sixth Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Northlake, Texas.

The term "Seventh Supplemental Contracting Party" means the Town of Argyle, Texas.

The term "Contracting Parties" means the Initial Contracting Parties, the First Supplemental Contracting Parties, the Second Supplemental Contracting Party, the Third Supplemental Contracting Party, the Fourth Supplemental Contracting Party, the Fifth Supplemental Contracting Party, the Sixth Supplemental Contracting Party, the Seventh Supplemental Contracting Party, and any other entity which becomes an Additional Contracting Party and therefore a Contracting Party pursuant to the Base Contract, the First Supplemental Contract, the Second Supplemental Contract, the Third Supplemental Contract, the Fourth Supplemental Contract, the Fifth Supplemental Contract, the Sixth Supplemental Contract and the Seventh Supplemental Contract.

The term "Base Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas-Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract, dated October 28, 1987, between the Issuer and the Initial Contracting Parties.

The term "First Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Supplemental Contract (City of Southlake and Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1), dated April 27, 1988, between the Issuer and the First Supplemental Contracting Parties.

The term "Second Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Second Supplemental Contract (City of Keller, Texas), dated April 22, 1992, between the Issuer and the Second Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Third Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Third Supplemental Contract (Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3), dated August 24, 1994, between the Issuer and the Third Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Fourth Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fourth Supplemental Contract (Town of Flower Mound, Texas), dated March 1, 2000, between the Issuer and the Fourth Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Fifth Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fifth Supplemental Contract (Town of Westlake, Texas), dated March 1, 2000, between the Issuer and the Fifth Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Sixth Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Northlake, Texas), dated December 1, 2001, between the Issuer and the Sixth Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Seventh Supplemental Contract" means the Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Argyle, Texas), dated December 6, 2006, as amended on December 5, 2007, between the Issuer and the Seventh Supplemental Contracting Party.

The term "Contracts" means collectively (a) the Base Contract, (b) the First Supplemental Contract, (c) the Second Supplemental Contract, (d) the Third Supplemental Contract, (e) the Fourth Supplemental Contract, (f) the Fifth Supplemental Contract, (g) the Sixth Supplemental Contract, (h) the Seventh Supplemental Contract, (i) any contracts with any entity which becomes an Additional Contracting Party and therefore a Contracting Party pursuant to the Base Contract, and (j) all other contracts and agreements executed between the Issuer and other entities in connection with the services of the System.

The terms "Gross Revenues of the System" and "Gross Revenues" mean all of the revenues, income, rentals, rates, fees, and charges of every nature derived by the Issuer from the operation and/or ownership of the System, including specifically all payments and amounts received by the Issuer from Contracts, and any income from the investment of money in any Funds created by this Resolution, excepting any amounts required to be rebated to the Internal Revenue Service in accordance with this Resolution.

The term "Operation and Maintenance Expenses" means all costs and expenses of operation and maintenance of the System, including (for greater certainty but without limiting the generality of the foregoing) repairs and replacements for which no special fund is created in the resolutions authorizing the issuance of Parity Bonds, operating personnel, the cost of utilities, the costs of supervision, engineering, accounting, auditing, legal services, supplies, services, administration of the System, including general overhead expenses of the Issuer attributable to the System, insurance premiums, equipment necessary for proper operation and maintenance of the System, and payments made by the Issuer in satisfaction of judgments resulting from claims not covered by the Issuer's insurance arising in connection with the operation and maintenance of the System. The term also includes the charges of the bank or banks and other entities acting as paying agents and/or registrars for any Bonds. The term does not include depreciation.

The terms "Net Revenues of the Authority's System", "Net Revenues of the System" and "Net Revenues" shall mean the Gross Revenues of the System less the Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System.

The term "Pledged Revenues" means: (a) the Net Revenues of the System and (b) any additional revenues, income, receipts, donations, or other resources derived or received or to be received from any public or private source, whether pursuant to an agreement or otherwise, which in the future may, at the option of the Issuer, be pledged to the payment of the Bonds or the Additional Bonds.

The terms "year" or "fiscal year" shall mean the Authority's fiscal year, which initially shall be the year commencing December 1 of each calendar year and ending on November 30 of the following calendar year, but which subsequently may be any other 12 month period hereafter established by the Issuer as a fiscal year.

Section 6. PLEDGE. (a) The Bonds authorized by this Resolution are "Additional Bonds" as permitted by Sections 18 and 19 of the resolutions authorizing the issuance of the Series 2000 Bonds, the Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009 Bonds, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued), and Sections 5 through 21 of this Resolution are supplemental to and cumulative of Sections 5 through 21 of the resolutions authorizing the issuance of the Series 2000 Bonds, Series 2003 Bonds, Series 2006 Bonds, Series 2007 Bonds, Series 2008 Bonds, Series 2009 Bonds, Series 2011 Bonds and Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued), with Sections 5 through 21 of this Resolution to be applicable to all Parity Bonds. The Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds, and the interest thereon, are and shall be secured equally and ratably on a parity by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues, and the Pledged Revenues are further pledged to the establishment and maintenance of the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund as provided in this Resolution.

(b) Chapter 1208, Government Code, applies to the issuance of the Bonds and the pledge of the Pledged Revenues granted by the Issuer under this Section, and is therefore valid, effective, and perfected. If Texas law is amended at any time while the Bonds are outstanding and unpaid such that the pledge of the Pledged Revenues granted by the Issuer under this Section is to be subject to the filing requirements of Chapter 9, Business & Commerce Code, then in order to preserve to the registered owners of the Bonds the perfection of the security interest in said pledge, the Issuer agrees to take such measures as it determines are reasonable and necessary under Texas law to comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 9, Business & Commerce Code and enable a filing to perfect the security interest in said pledge to occur.

Section 7. REVENUE FUND CREATION. There has been created, and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer, and accounted for separate and apart from all other funds of the Issuer, a special fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Revenue Fund" (hereinafter called the "Revenue Fund"). All Gross Revenues of the System (excepting investment income from any Fund other than the Revenue Fund) shall be credited to the Revenue Fund promptly after they become available. All Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System shall be paid from the Gross Revenues of the System, as a first charge against same.

Section 8. INTEREST AND SINKING FUND. For the sole purpose of providing an interest and sinking fund for paying the principal of and interest on all Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds, as the same come due, there has been created and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Interest and Sinking Fund" (hereinafter called the "Interest and Sinking Fund").

Section 9. RESERVE FUND. There has been created and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Reserve Fund (hereinafter called the "Reserve Fund"). The Reserve Fund shall be used solely for the purpose of finally retiring the last of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, or for paying when due the principal of and interest on any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds when and to the extent the amounts in the Interest and Sinking Fund and Contingency Fund are insufficient for such purpose.

Section 10. CONTINGENCY FUND. There has been created and there shall be established and maintained on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Contingency Fund" (hereinafter called the "Contingency Fund"). The Contingency Fund shall be used solely for the purpose of paying the costs of improvements, enlargements, extensions or additions, or other capital expenditures relating to the System, and unexpected or extraordinary repairs or replacements of the System for which System funds are

not otherwise available, or for paying unexpected or extraordinary Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System for which System funds are not otherwise available, or for paying principal of and interest on any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, when and to the extent the amount in the Interest and Sinking Fund is insufficient for such purpose.

Section 11. REVENUE FUND. All Pledged Revenues shall be credited as received by the Issuer to the Revenue Fund, and shall be deposited from the Revenue Fund into the other Funds created by this Resolution, in the manner and amounts hereinafter provided, and each of such Fund shall have priority as to such deposits in the order in which they are treated in the following Sections.

Section 12. INTEREST AND SINKING FUND REQUIREMENTS. There shall be deposited into the Interest and Sinking Fund the following:

(a) promptly after the delivery of the Bonds the Issuer shall cause to be deposited to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund, from the proceeds received from the sale and delivery of the Bonds, the accrued interest received, if any, plus a sum of money sufficient to pay interest on the Bonds issued for the acquisition and construction of the Project for a period not exceeding 24 months following the delivery of the Bonds, as designated by the Authorized Officer, and such deposit shall be used to pay part of the interest coming due on the Bonds during the period of the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the System.

(b) on or before the last day of the January or July, whichever comes first, immediately following delivery of the Bonds to the purchaser thereof, and semiannually thereafter, on or before the last day of each January and July, an amount sufficient, together with other amounts, if any, then on hand in the Interest and Sinking Fund and available for such purpose, to pay the interest and/or principal and interest scheduled to accrue and come due on the Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds on the next succeeding interest payment date.

The Interest and Sinking Fund shall be used solely to pay the principal of and interest on the Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds as such principal matures and such interest comes due.

Section 13. RESERVE REQUIREMENTS. Immediately after the delivery of the Bonds, the Issuer will deposit in the Reserve Fund an amount of money derived from the sale of the Bonds which, when added to the amount of money and investments now on deposit will at least equal in market value the average annual principal and interest requirements of the Parity Bonds (the "Reserve Required Amount"). No deposits shall be made into the Reserve Fund as long as the money and investments in the Reserve Fund are at least equal in market value to the Reserve Required Amount; but if and whenever the market value of money and investments in the Reserve Fund is reduced below said Reserve Required Amount because of a decrease in market value of investments, then the Issuer shall require the Contracting Parties to increase their payments under their Contracts as soon as practicable, and in any event within one year, in an amount sufficient to restore the Reserve Fund to the Reserve Required Amount; and in the event the Reserve Fund is used to pay the principal of or interest on the Parity Bonds because of insufficient amounts being available in the Interest and Sinking Fund and/or the Contingency Fund, then the Issuer shall require the Contracting Parties to increase their payments under their Contracts in an amount sufficient to restore the Reserve Fund to the Reserve Required Amount in market value, and the Issuer shall deposit in the Reserve Fund, in approximately equal semiannual installments, such amounts as are required to restore the Reserve Fund to the Reserve Required Amount in market value within five years from any date of the use of the Reserve Fund to pay such principal or interest. If and whenever Additional Bonds are issued pursuant to Section 18, then the term "Reserve Required Amount" thereafter shall mean an amount in market value equal to the average annual principal and interest requirements of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds which will be outstanding after the issuance of each installment of Additional Bonds.

Section 14. CONTINGENCY REQUIREMENTS. There is currently on deposit in the Contingency Fund the sum of \$100,000. No additional deposits are required to be made to the credit of the Contingency Fund unless and until such amount therein is reduced or depleted or unless the Issuer, upon the advice and recommendation of an independent engineer or firm of engineers, determines it necessary to increase such amount in order adequately to provide for contingencies related to the System, or unless the Issuer provides for an increase in such amount in any resolution authorizing Additional Bonds. If and when such amount in the Contingency Fund is reduced or depleted, or an increase in such amount has been provided for, then, subject and subordinate to making the required deposits to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund, such reduction or depletion shall be restored, and/or such amount shall be increased, to the extent not otherwise funded, from amounts which shall be provided for such purpose in the Issuer's Annual Budget for the next ensuing fiscal year or years; provided that the Issuer is not required to budget more than one third of the amount to be accumulated for such purpose during any one fiscal year. So long as the Contingency Fund contains money and investments not less than the amount of \$100,000 (or the amount to which the Contingency Fund may be increased as aforesaid) in market value, any surplus in the Contingency Fund over said amount shall, immediately upon receipt, be deposited to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund.

Section 15. INVESTMENTS. (a) Money in any Fund maintained pursuant to this Resolution may, at the option of the Issuer, be placed in interest bearing time deposits with banks secured by obligations of the kind hereinafter described, or be invested in direct obligations of the United States of America, obligations the principal of and interest on which are guaranteed by the United States of America, or invested in direct obligations of the Federal Intermediate Credit Banks, Federal Land Banks, Banks for Cooperatives, or Federal Home Loan Banks. Such deposits and investments shall be made consistent with the estimated requirements of such Funds, and any obligation in which money is so invested shall be kept and held for the benefit of the owners of the Parity Bonds, and shall be promptly sold and the proceeds of sale applied to the making of all payments required to be made from the Fund from which the investment was made. All earnings from the deposit or investment of any such Fund shall be credited to such Fund, except that if on February 1 of any year the Reserve Fund should contain an amount in excess of the Reserve Required Amount in market value, such excess shall be deposited into the Interest and Sinking Fund. All investment earnings on deposit in the Interest and Sinking Fund shall reduce the amounts which otherwise would be required to be deposited therein. Uninvested money in any Fund shall be secured in the manner prescribed by law for securing funds of the Issuer.

(b) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Resolution, all investment income, if any, required by the United States Internal Revenue Code to be rebated by the Issuer to the Internal Revenue Service in order to prevent the Parity Bonds from being or becoming taxable "arbitrage bonds" under said Code shall be withdrawn from each Fund created by this Resolution and so rebated to the extent so required.

Section 16. DEFICIENCIES; EXCESS PLEDGED REVENUES. (a) If on any occasion there shall not be sufficient Pledged Revenues to make the required deposits into the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund, then such deficiency shall be made up as soon as possible from the next available Pledged Revenues.

(b) Subject to making the required deposits to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund, when and as required by this Resolution, or any resolution authorizing the issuance of Additional Bonds, the excess Pledged Revenues may be used for any lawful purpose relating to the System.

Section 17. PAYMENT OF PARITY BONDS AND ADDITIONAL BONDS. On or before the February 1 or August 1, whichever comes first, immediately following delivery of the Bonds to the purchaser thereof, and semiannually on or before each February 1 and August 1 thereafter while any of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds are outstanding and unpaid, the Issuer shall make available to the Paying

Agent/Registrar, out of the Interest and Sinking Fund, or the Contingency Fund or the Reserve Fund, if necessary, money sufficient to pay such interest on and such principal of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds as will be payable on each such February 1 and August 1.

Section 18. **ADDITIONAL BONDS.** (a) The Issuer shall have the right and power at any time and from time to time, and in one or more Series or issues, to authorize, issue, and deliver additional parity revenue bonds (herein called "Additional Bonds"), in accordance with law, in any amounts, for any lawful purpose related to the System, including the refunding of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds. Such Additional Bonds, if and when authorized, issued, and delivered in accordance with the provisions hereof, shall be secured by and made payable equally and ratably on a parity with the Parity Bonds, from a first lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues.

(b) The Interest and Sinking Fund, the Reserve Fund, and the Contingency Fund established pursuant to this Resolution shall secure and be used to pay all Additional Bonds as well as the Parity Bonds, all on a parity. However, each resolution under which Additional Bonds are issued shall provide and require that, in addition to the amounts required by the provisions of this Resolution and the provisions of each resolution authorizing Additional Bonds to be deposited to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund, the Issuer shall deposit to the credit of the Interest and Sinking Fund at least such amounts as are required for the payment of all principal of and interest on said Additional Bonds then being issued, as the same come due; and that the aggregate amount to be accumulated and maintained in the Reserve Fund shall be increased (if and to the extent necessary) to an amount not less than the average annual principal and interest requirements of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds which will be outstanding after the issuance and delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds; and that the required additional amount shall be so accumulated by the deposit in the Reserve Fund of all or any part of said required additional amount in cash immediately after the delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds, or, at the option of the Issuer, by the deposit of said required additional amount (or any balance of said required additional amount not deposited in cash as permitted above) in 120 approximately equal monthly installments, made on or before the 25th day of each month following the delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds.

(c) All calculations of average annual principal and interest requirements made pursuant to this Section shall be made as of and from the date of the Additional Bonds then proposed to be issued.

(d) The principal of all Additional Bonds must be scheduled to be paid or mature on February 1 of the years in which such principal is scheduled to be paid or mature; and all interest thereon must be payable on February 1 and August 1, and for the purposes of this and all other Sections of this Resolution, principal amounts of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds or portions thereof which are required to be prepaid or redeemed on any date prior to scheduled due date or maturity pursuant to any mandatory redemption requirements shall be deemed to be due and maturing amounts of principal on the date required to be prepaid or redeemed.

Section 19. **FURTHER REQUIREMENTS FOR ADDITIONAL BONDS.** Additional Bonds shall be issued only in accordance with the provisions hereof, but notwithstanding any provisions hereof to the contrary, no installment, series, or issue of Additional Bonds shall be issued or delivered unless the President and the Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer sign a written certificate to the effect that the Issuer is not in default as to any covenant, condition, or obligation in connection with all outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, and the resolutions authorizing the same, that the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund each contains the amount then required to be therein, and that either (1) based on a report of an independent engineer or firm of engineers, the Pledged Revenues, in each fiscal year thereafter, commencing with the third complete fiscal year following the date of such report, are estimated to be at least equal to 1.25 times the average annual principal and interest requirements of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds to be outstanding after the delivery of the then proposed Additional Bonds, or (2) based upon an opinion of legal counsel to the Issuer, there are Contracts then in effect pursuant to which

the Contracting Parties and others, if any, which are parties to such Contracts are obligated to make payments to the Issuer during each fiscal year (including during periods when services of the System may not be available to such Contracting Parties and others) in such amounts as shall be necessary to provide to the Issuer Pledged Revenues sufficient to pay when due all principal of and interest on all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds to be outstanding after the issuance of the proposed Additional Bonds, and to make the deposits into the Reserve Fund as required under this Resolution.

Section 20. GENERAL COVENANTS. The Issuer further covenants and agrees that:

(a) PERFORMANCE. It will faithfully perform at all times any and all covenants, undertakings, stipulations, and provisions contained in each resolution authorizing the issuance of the Parity Bonds and any Additional Bonds, and in each and every Parity Bond and Additional Bond; that it will promptly pay or cause to be paid the principal of and interest on every Parity Bond and Additional Bond, on the dates and in the places and manner prescribed in such resolutions and Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, and that it will, at the times and in the manner prescribed, deposit or cause to be deposited the amounts required to be deposited into the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund and any holder of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds may require the Issuer, its Board of Directors, and its officials and employees, to carry out, respect, or enforce the covenants and obligations of each resolution authorizing the issuance of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, by all legal and equitable means, including specifically, but without limitation, the use and filing of mandamus proceedings, in any court of competent jurisdiction, against the Issuer, its Board of Directors, and its officials and employees.

(b) ISSUER'S LEGAL AUTHORITY. It is a duly created and existing conservation and reclamation district of the State of Texas pursuant to Article 16, Section 59, of the Texas Constitution, and Chapter 518, Acts of the 54th Legislature, Regular Session, 1955, as amended, and is duly authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to create and issue the Parity Bonds; that all action on its part of the creation and issuance of the Parity Bonds has been duly and effectively taken, and that the Parity Bonds in the hands of the owners thereof are and will be valid and enforceable special obligations of the Issuer in accordance with their terms.

(c) TITLE. It has or will obtain lawful title to, or the lawful right to use and operate, the lands, buildings, and facilities constituting the System and will use its best efforts to acquire and construct the System as provided in the Contracts, that it warrants that it will defend the title to or lawful right to use and operate, all of the aforesaid lands, buildings, and facilities, and every part thereof, for the benefit of the owners of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds against the claims and demands of all persons whomsoever, that it is lawfully qualified to pledge the Pledged Revenues to the payment of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds in the manner prescribed herein, and has lawfully exercised such rights.

(d) LIENS. It will from time to time and before the same become delinquent pay and discharge all taxes, assessments, and governmental charges, if any, which shall be lawfully imposed upon it, or the System, that it will pay all lawful claims for rents, royalties, labor, materials, and supplies which if unpaid might by law become a lien or charge thereon, the lien of which would be prior to or interfere with the liens hereof, so that the priority of the liens granted hereunder shall be fully preserved in the manner provided herein, and that it will not create or suffer to be created any mechanic's, laborer's, materialman's, or other lien or charge which might or could be prior to the liens hereof, or do or suffer any matter or thing whereby the liens hereof might or could be impaired; provided, however, that no such tax, assessment, or charge, and that no such claims which might be used as the basis of a mechanic's, laborer's, materialman's, or other lien or charge, shall be required to be paid so long as the validity of the same shall be contested in good faith by the Issuer.

(e) **OPERATION OF SYSTEM.** That while the Parity Bonds or any Additional Bonds are outstanding and unpaid it will cause the System to be continuously and efficiently operated and maintained in good condition, repair, and working order, and at a reasonable cost.

(f) **FURTHER ENCUMBRANCE.** That while the Parity Bonds or any Additional Bonds are outstanding and unpaid the Issuer shall not additionally encumber the Pledged Revenues in any manner, except as permitted hereby in connection with Additional Bonds, unless said encumbrance is made junior and subordinate in all respects to the liens, pledges, covenants and agreements hereof and any resolution authorizing the issuance of Additional Bonds; but the right of the Issuer and the Board to issue revenue bonds for any lawful purpose payable from a subordinate lien on the Pledged Revenues is specifically recognized and retained.

(g) **SALE OF PROPERTY.** That while the Parity Bonds or any Additional Bonds, are outstanding and unpaid, the Issuer will maintain its current legal corporate status as a conservation and reclamation district, and the Issuer shall not sell, convey, mortgage, or in any manner transfer title to, or lease, or otherwise dispose of the entire System, or any significant or substantial part thereof; provided that whenever the Issuer deems it necessary or advisable to dispose of any real or personal property, machinery, fixtures, or equipment, it may sell or otherwise dispose of such property, machinery, fixtures, or equipment if the Issuer determines that such property, machinery, fixtures, or equipment are not needed for System purposes, or if the Issuer has made arrangements to replace the same or provide substitutes therefor.

(h) **INSURANCE.** (1) That it will carry fire, casualty, public liability, and other insurance (including self-insurance to the extent deemed advisable by the Issuer) on the System for purposes and in amounts which ordinarily would be carried by a privately owned utility company owning and operating such facilities, except that the Issuer shall not be required to carry liability insurance except to insure itself against risk of loss due to claims for which it can, in the opinion of the Issuer's legal counsel, be liable under the Texas Tort Claims Act or any similar law or judicial decision. Such insurance will provide, to the extent feasible and practical, for the restoration of damaged or destroyed properties and equipment to minimize the interruption of the services of such facilities.

All such policies shall be open to the inspection of the owners of the Parity Bonds and their representatives at all reasonable times.

(2) Upon the happening of any loss or damage covered by insurance from one or more of said causes, the Issuer shall make due proof of loss and shall do all things necessary or desirable to cause the insuring companies to make payment in full directly to the Issuer. The proceeds of insurance covering such property, together with any other funds necessary and available for such purpose, shall be used forthwith by the Issuer for repairing the property damaged or replacing the property destroyed; provided, however, that if said insurance proceeds and other funds are insufficient for such purpose, then said insurance proceeds pertaining to the System shall be used promptly as follows:

(a) for the redemption prior to maturity of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, if any, ratably in the proportion that the outstanding principal of each Series or issue of Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds bears to the total outstanding principal of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds; provided that if on any such occasion the principal of any such Series or issue is not subject to redemption, it shall not be regarded as outstanding in making the foregoing computation; or

(b) if none of the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds is subject to redemption, then for the purchase on the open market and retirement of said Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, in the same proportion as prescribed in the foregoing clause (2), to the extent practicable; provided that the purchase price for any such Parity Bond or Additional Bond shall not exceed the redemption price of

such Parity Bond or Additional Bond on the first date upon which it becomes subject to redemption; or

(c) to the extent that the foregoing clauses (a) and (b) cannot be complied with at the time, the insurance proceeds, or the remainder thereof, shall be deposited in a special and separate trust fund, at an official depository of the Issuer, to be designated the Insurance Account. The Insurance Account shall be held until such time as the foregoing clauses (a) and/or (b) can be complied with, or until other funds become available which, together with the Insurance Account, will be sufficient to make the repairs or replacements originally required, whichever of said events occurs first.

(i) **RATE COVENANT.** It will fix, establish, maintain, and collect such rentals, rates, charges, and fees for the use and availability of the System as are necessary to produce Gross Revenues of the System sufficient, together with any other Pledged Revenues, (a) to pay all Operation and Maintenance Expenses of the System, and (b) to make all payments and deposits required to be made into the Interest and Sinking Fund and to maintain the Reserve Fund and the Contingency Fund, when and as required by the resolutions authorizing all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds.

(j) **RECORDS.** Proper books of records and account will be kept in which full, true, and correct entries will be made of all dealings, activities, and transactions relating to the System, the Pledged Revenues, and all Funds created pursuant to this Bond Resolution; and all books, documents, and vouchers relating thereto shall at all reasonable times be made available for inspection upon request of the owner of any Parity Bond.

(k) **AUDITS.** Each fiscal year while any of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds are outstanding, an audit will be made of its books and accounts relating to the System and the Pledged Revenues by an independent certified public accountant or an independent firm of certified public accountants. As soon as practicable after the close of each fiscal year, and when said audit has been completed and made available to the Issuer, a copy of such audit for the preceding fiscal year shall be mailed to any owner of any Parity Bond who shall so request in writing. Such annual audit reports shall be open to the inspection of the owners of the Parity Bonds and their agents and representatives at all reasonable times.

(l) **GOVERNMENTAL AGENCIES.** It will comply with all of the terms and conditions of any and all franchises and permits applicable to the System granted by any governmental agency, and all franchises, permits, and agreements applicable to the System and the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds entered into between the Issuer and any governmental agency, and the Issuer will take all action necessary to enforce said terms and conditions; and the Issuer will obtain and keep in full force and effect all franchises, permits, and other requirements necessary with respect to the acquisition, construction, operation, and maintenance of the System.

(m) **CONTRACTS.** It will comply with the terms and conditions of the Contracts and will cause the Contracting Parties and others to comply with all of their obligations thereunder by all lawful means; and that the Contracts will not be changed, rescinded, modified, or amended in any way which would have a materially adverse effect on the operation and maintenance of the System by the Issuer or the rights of owners of the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds.

(n) **ANNUAL BUDGET.** The Issuer shall prepare and adopt an Annual Budget for the System for each fiscal year as required by the Contracts.

Section 21. AMENDMENT OF RESOLUTION. (a) The owners of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds aggregating a majority in principal amount of the aggregate principal amount of then outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment to any resolution authorizing the issuance of any Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, which may be deemed

necessary or desirable by the Issuer, provided, however, that nothing herein contained shall permit or be construed to permit the amendment of the terms and conditions in said resolutions or in the Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds so as to:

- (1) Make any change in the maturity of the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds;
- (2) Reduce the rate of interest borne by any of the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds;
- (3) Reduce the amount of the principal payable on the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds;
- (4) Modify the terms of payment of principal of or interest on the outstanding Parity Bonds or Additional Bonds, or impose any conditions with respect to such payment;
- (5) Affect the rights of the owners of less than all of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds then outstanding;
- (6) Change the minimum percentage of the principal amount of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment.

(b) If at any time the Issuer shall desire to amend a resolution under this Section, the Issuer shall cause notice of the proposed amendment to be published in a financial newspaper or journal published in The City of New York, New York, once during each calendar week for at least two successive calendar weeks. Such notice shall briefly set forth the nature of the proposed amendment and shall state that a copy thereof is on file at the principal office of each Paying Agent/Registrar for the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds, for inspection by all owners of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds. Such publication is not required, however, if such notice in writing is given to the owner of each of the Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds.

(c) Whenever at any time not less than thirty days, and within one year, from the date of the first publication of said notice or other service of written notice the Issuer shall receive an instrument or instruments executed by the owners of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds then outstanding, which instrument or instruments shall refer to the proposed amendment described in said notice and which specifically consent to and approve such amendment in substantially the form of the copy thereof on file as aforesaid, the Issuer may adopt the amendatory resolution in substantially the same form.

(d) Upon the adoption of any amendatory resolution pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the resolution being amended shall be deemed to be amended in accordance with the amendatory resolution, and the respective rights, duties, and obligations of the Issuer and all the owners of then outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds and all future Additional Parity Bonds shall thereafter be determined, exercised, and enforced hereunder, subject in all respects to such amendment.

(e) Any consent given by the owner of a Parity Bond or Additional Bonds pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall be irrevocable for a period of six months from the date of the first publication of the notice provided for in this Section, and shall be conclusive and binding upon such owner and all future owners of the principal amount of such Parity Bond or Additional Bond and any bond issued in substitution and exchange therefor during such period. Such consent may be revoked at any time after six months from the date of the first publication of such notice by the owner who gave such consent, or by a successor in title, by filing notice thereof with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such Parity Bond or Additional Bond, and the Issuer, but such revocation shall not be effective if the owner of a majority in aggregate principal

amount of then outstanding Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds as in this Section defined have, prior to the attempted revocation, consented to and approved the amendment.

(f) For the purpose of this Section, all matters relating to the ownership of Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds shall be determined from the Registration Books of the Issuer kept by the Paying/Registrar for such Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds.

Section 22. DEFEASANCE OF BONDS. (a) Any Bond and the interest thereon shall be deemed to be paid, retired, and no longer outstanding (a "Defeased Bond") within the meaning of this Resolution, except to the extent provided in subsection (d) of this Section, when payment of the principal of such Bond, plus interest thereon to the due date (whether such due date be by reason of maturity or otherwise) either (i) shall have been made or caused to be made in accordance with the terms thereof, or (ii) shall have been provided for on or before such due date by irrevocably depositing with or making available to the Paying Agent/Registrar in accordance with an escrow agreement or other instrument (the "Future Escrow Agreement") for such payment (1) lawful money of the United States of America sufficient to make such payment or (2) Defeasance Securities that mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times as will insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to provide for such payment, and when proper arrangements have been made by the Issuer with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of its services until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable. At such time as a Bond shall be deemed to be a Defeased Bond hereunder, as aforesaid, such Bond and the interest thereon shall no longer be secured by, payable from, or entitled to the benefits of, the Pledged Revenues as provided in this Resolution, and such principal and interest shall be payable solely from such money or Defeasance Securities. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Resolution to the contrary, it is hereby provided that any determination not to redeem Defeased Bonds that is made in conjunction with the payment arrangements specified in subsection 22(a)(i) or (ii) shall not be irrevocable, provided that: (1) in the proceedings providing for such payment arrangements, the Issuer expressly reserves the right to call the Defeased Bonds for redemption; (2) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Defeased Bonds immediately following the making of the payment arrangements; and (3) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

(b) Any moneys so deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar may at the written direction of the Issuer also be invested in Defeasance Securities, maturing in the amounts and times as hereinbefore set forth, and all income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar that is not required for the payment of the Bonds and interest thereon, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be turned over to the Issuer, or deposited as directed in writing by the Issuer. Any Future Escrow Agreement pursuant to which the money and/or Defeasance Securities are held for the payment of Defeased Bonds may contain provisions permitting the investment or reinvestment of such moneys in Defeasance Securities or the substitution of other Defeasance Securities upon the satisfaction of the requirements specified in subsection 22(a)(i) or (ii). All income from such Defeasance Securities received by the Paying Agent/Registrar which is not required for the payment of the Defeased Bonds, with respect to which such money has been so deposited, shall be remitted to the Issuer or deposited as directed in writing by the Issuer.

(c) The term "Defeasance Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds.

(d) Until all Defeased Bonds shall have become due and payable, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall perform the services of Paying Agent/Registrar for such Defeased Bonds the same as if they had not been defeased, and the Issuer shall make proper arrangements to provide and pay for such services as required by this Resolution.

(e) In the event that the Issuer elects to defease less than all of the principal amount of Bonds of a maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall select, or cause to be selected, such amount of Bonds by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate.

Section 23. **DAMAGED, MUTILATED, LOST, STOLEN OR DESTROYED BONDS.** (a) Replacement Bonds. In the event any outstanding Bond is damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall cause to be printed, executed and delivered, a new bond of the same principal amount, maturity and interest rate, as the damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed Bond, in replacement for such Bond in the manner hereinafter provided.

(b) Application for Replacement Bonds. Application for replacement of damaged, mutilated, lost, stolen, or destroyed Bonds shall be made by the registered owner thereof to the Paying Agent/Registrar. In every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Bond, the registered owner applying for a replacement bond shall furnish to the Issuer and to the Paying Agent/Registrar such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless from any loss or damage with respect thereto. Also, in every case of loss, theft or destruction of a Bond, the registered owner shall furnish to the Issuer and to the Paying Agent/Registrar evidence to their satisfaction of the loss, theft or destruction of such Bond, as the case may be. In every case of damage or mutilation of a Bond, the registered owner shall surrender to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation the Bond so damaged or mutilated.

(c) No Default Occurred. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, in the event any such Bond shall have matured, and no default has occurred which is then continuing in the payment of the principal of, redemption premium, if any, or interest on the Bond, the Issuer may authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a damaged or mutilated Bond) instead of issuing a replacement Bond, provided security or indemnity is furnished as above provided in this Section.

(d) Charge for Issuing Replacement Bonds. Prior to the issuance of any replacement bond, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall charge the registered owner of such Bond with all legal, printing, and other expenses in connection therewith. Every replacement bond issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section by virtue of the fact that any Bond is lost, stolen, or destroyed shall constitute a contractual obligation of the Issuer whether or not the lost, stolen, or destroyed Bond shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Resolution equally and proportionately with any and all other Bonds duly issued under this Resolution.

(e) Authority for Issuing Replacement Bonds. In accordance with Subchapter B, Chapter 1206, Texas Government Code, this Section shall constitute authority for the issuance of any such replacement bond without necessity of further action by the governing body of the Issuer or any other body or person, and the duty of the replacement of such bonds is hereby authorized and imposed upon the Paying Agent/Registrar and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall authenticate and deliver such Bonds in the form and manner and with the effect, as provided in Section 3 of this Resolution for Bonds issued in conversion and exchange for other Bonds.

Section 24. **COVENANTS REGARDING TAX-EXEMPTION.** The Issuer covenants to take any action necessary to assure, or refrain from any action which would adversely affect, the treatment of the Bonds as obligations described in section 103 of the Code, the interest on which is not includable in the "gross income" of the holder for purposes of federal income taxation. In furtherance thereof, the Issuer covenants as follows:

(a) to take any action to assure that no more than 10 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds or the projects financed therewith (less amounts deposited to a reserve fund, if any) are used for any "private business use," as defined in section 141(b)(6) of the Code or, if more than 10 percent of the proceeds or the projects financed therewith are so used, such amounts, whether or not

received by the Issuer, with respect to such private business use, do not, under the terms of this Resolution or any underlying arrangement, directly or indirectly, secure or provide for the payment of more than 10 percent of the debt service on the Bonds, in contravention of section 141(b)(2) of the Code;

(b) to take any action to assure that in the event that the "private business use" described in subsection (a) hereof exceeds 5 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds or the projects financed therewith (less amounts deposited into a reserve fund, if any) then the amount in excess of 5 percent is used for a "private business use" which is "related" and not "disproportionate," within the meaning of section 141(b)(3) of the Code, to the governmental use;

(c) to take any action to assure that no amount which is greater than the lesser of \$5,000,000, or 5 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds (less amounts deposited into a reserve fund, if any) is directly or indirectly used to finance loans to persons, other than state or local governmental units, in contravention of section 141(c) of the Code;

(d) to refrain from taking any action which would otherwise result in the Bonds being treated as "private activity bonds" within the meaning of section 141(b) of the Code;

(e) to refrain from taking any action that would result in the Bonds being "federally guaranteed" within the meaning of section 149(b) of the Code;

(f) to refrain from using any portion of the proceeds of the Bonds, directly or indirectly, to acquire or to replace funds which were used, directly or indirectly, to acquire investment property (as defined in section 148(b)(2) of the Code) which produces a materially higher yield over the term of the Bonds, other than investment property acquired with --

(1) proceeds of the Bonds invested for a reasonable temporary period until such proceeds are needed for the purpose for which the bonds are issued,

(2) amounts invested in a bona fide debt service fund, within the meaning of section 1.148-1(b) of the Treasury Regulations, and

(3) amounts deposited in any reasonably required reserve or replacement fund to the extent such amounts do not exceed 10 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds;

(g) to otherwise restrict the use of the proceeds of the Bonds or amounts treated as proceeds of the Bonds, as may be necessary, so that the Bonds do not otherwise contravene the requirements of section 148 of the Code (relating to arbitrage) and, to the extent applicable, section 149(d) of the Code (relating to advance refundings);

(h) to pay to the United States of America at least once during each five-year period (beginning on the date of delivery of the Bonds) an amount that is at least equal to 90 percent of the "Excess Earnings," within the meaning of section 148(f) of the Code and to pay to the United States of America, not later than 60 days after the Bonds have been paid in full, 100 percent of the amount then required to be paid as a result of Excess Earnings under section 148(f) of the Code; and

In order to facilitate compliance with the above covenant (h), a "Rebate Fund" is hereby established by the Issuer for the sole benefit of the United States of America, and such fund shall not be subject to the claim of any other person, including without limitation the bondholders. The Rebate Fund is established for the additional purpose of compliance with section 148 of the Code.

For purposes of the foregoing (a) and (b), the Issuer understands that the term "proceeds" includes "disposition proceeds" as defined in the Treasury Regulations and, in the case of refunding bonds, transferred proceeds (if any) and the proceeds of the refunded bonds expended prior to the date of issuance of the Bonds. It is the understanding of the Issuer that the covenants contained herein are intended to assure compliance with the Code and any regulations or rulings promulgated by the U.S. Department of the Treasury pursuant thereto. In the event that regulations or rulings are hereafter promulgated which modify or expand provisions of the Code, as applicable to the Bonds, the Issuer will not be required to comply with any covenant contained herein to the extent that such failure to comply, in the opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel, will not adversely affect the exemption from federal income taxation of interest on the Bonds under section 103 of the Code. In the event that regulations or rulings are hereafter promulgated which impose additional requirements which are applicable to the Bonds, the Issuer agrees to comply with the additional requirements to the extent necessary, in the opinion of nationally recognized bond counsel, to preserve the exemption from federal income taxation of interest on the Bonds under section 103 of the Code. In furtherance of such intention, the Issuer hereby authorizes and directs the President of the Board of Authority, or the Authorized Officer, to execute any documents, certificates or reports required by the Code and to make such elections, on behalf of the Issuer, which may be permitted by the Code as are consistent with the purpose for the issuance of the Bonds. This Resolution is intended to satisfy the official intent requirements set forth in section 1.150-2 of the Treasury Regulations.

Section 25. CUSTODY, APPROVAL, AND REGISTRATION OF BONDS; BOND COUNSEL'S OPINION, CUSIP NUMBERS, AND INSURANCE. The President of the Board of Directors of the Issuer and the Authorized Officer are hereby authorized to have control of the Bonds issued hereunder and all necessary records and proceedings pertaining to the Bonds pending their delivery and their investigation, examination, and approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and their registration by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas. Upon registration of the Bonds said Comptroller of Public Accounts (or a deputy designated in writing to act for said Comptroller) shall manually sign the Comptroller's Registration Certificate on the Bonds, and the seal of said Comptroller shall be impressed, or placed in facsimile, on the Bonds. The approving legal opinion of the Issuer's Bond Counsel and the assigned CUSIP numbers may, at the option of the Issuer, be printed on the Bonds or on any Parity Bonds issued and delivered in conversion of and exchange or replacement of any Bond, but neither shall have any legal effect, and shall be solely for the convenience and information of the registered owners of the Bonds. If insurance is obtained on any of the Bonds, the Bonds and all other Bonds shall bear an appropriate legend concerning insurance as provided by the insurer.

Section 26. FURTHER PROVISIONS AND PROCEDURES. The President, Vice President and Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, the General Manager of the Issuer and all other officers, employees and agents of the Issuer, and each of them, shall be and they are hereby expressly authorized, empowered and directed from time to time and at any time to do and perform all such acts and things and to execute, acknowledge and deliver in the name and under the corporate seal and on behalf of the Issuer a Letter of Representation with DTC regarding the Book-Entry Only System, the Paying Agent/Registrar Agreement with the Paying Agent/Registrar and all other instruments, whether or not herein mentioned, as may be necessary or desirable in order to carry out the terms and provisions of this Resolution, the Letter of Representation, the Bonds, the sale of the Bonds and the Official Statement. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, while the Bonds are subject to DTC's Book-Entry Only System and to the extent permitted by law, the Letter of Representation is hereby incorporated herein and its provisions shall prevail over any other provisions of this Resolution in the event of conflict. In case any officer whose signature shall appear on any Bond shall cease to be such officer before the delivery of such Bond, such signature shall nevertheless be valid and sufficient for all purposes the same as if such officer had remained in office until such delivery.

Section 27. CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION. (a) As used in this Section, the following terms have the meanings ascribed to such terms below:

"MSRB" means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

"Rule" means SEC Rule 15c2-12, as amended from time to time.

"SEC" means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

(b) Pursuant to a Continuing Disclosure Agreement by and between the Issuer and the Contracting Parties, the Issuer and the Contracting Parties have undertaken for the benefit of the beneficial owners of the Bonds, to the extent set forth therein, to provide continuing disclosure of financial information and operating data with respect to the Contracting Parties in accordance with the Rule as promulgated by the SEC.

(c) The Issuer shall notify the MSRB, in a timely manner not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event, of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds:

1. Principal and interest payment delinquencies;
2. Non-payment related defaults, if material;
3. Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
4. Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
5. Substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
6. Adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds;
7. Modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material;
8. Bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
9. Defeasances;
10. Release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material;
11. Rating changes;
12. Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Issuer;
13. The consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Issuer or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Issuer, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and
14. Appointment of a successor Paying Agent/Registrar or change in the name of the Paying Agent/Registrar, if material.

(d) The Issuer additionally covenants, for the benefit of the beneficial owners of the Bonds, and for the beneficial owners of Texas Water Development Board bonds, to request and use its best efforts to obtain the financial information and operating data from the Contracting Parties of the type to be included in Appendix B of any official statements of the Issuer relating to "Bonds" (as defined in the Continuing Disclosure Agreements), and to file, or cause to be filed, such financial information and operating data in the manner required by the Rule as if the Bonds had been initially sold pursuant to an "Offering" as defined in the Rule.

Section 28. INTEREST EARNINGS ON BOND PROCEEDS. Interest earnings derived from the investment of proceeds from the sale of the Bonds shall be used along with other bond proceeds for the purpose for which the Bonds are issued set forth in Section 1 hereof; provided that after completion of such purpose, if any of such interest earnings remain on hand, such interest earnings shall be deposited in the Interest and Redemption Fund. It is further provided, however, that any interest earnings on bond proceeds

which are required to be rebated to the United States of America pursuant to Section 24 hereof in order to prevent the Bonds from being arbitrage bonds shall be so rebated and not considered as interest earnings for the purposes of this Section.

Section 29. **CONSTRUCTION FUND.** The Issuer hereby creates and establishes and shall maintain on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Series 2011A Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Construction Fund" for use by the Issuer for payment of all lawful costs associated with the acquisition and construction of the Project as hereinbefore provided. Upon payment of all such costs, any moneys remaining on deposit in said Fund, to the extent not applied as set forth in Section 32(b) of this Resolution, shall be transferred to the Interest and Sinking Fund.

Section 30. **ALLOCATION OF, AND LIMITATION ON, EXPENDITURES FOR THE PROJECT.** The Issuer covenants to account for the expenditure of sale proceeds and investment earnings to be used for the purposes described in Section 1 of this Resolution (the "Project") on its books and records in accordance with the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code. The Issuer recognizes that in order for the proceeds to be considered used for the reimbursement of costs, the proceeds must be allocated to expenditures within 18 months of the later of the date that (1) the expenditure is made, or (2) the Project is completed; but in no event later than three years after the date on which the original expenditure is paid. The foregoing notwithstanding, the Issuer recognizes that in order for proceeds to be expended under the Internal Revenue Code, the sale proceeds or investment earnings must be expended no more than 60 days after the earlier of (1) the fifth anniversary of the delivery of the Bonds, or (2) the date the Bonds are retired. The Issuer agrees to obtain the advice of nationally-recognized bond counsel if such expenditure fails to comply with the foregoing to assure that such expenditure will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds. For purposes hereof, the issuer shall not be obligated to comply with this covenant if it obtains an opinion that such failure to comply will not adversely affect the excludability for federal income tax purposes from gross income of the interest.

Section 31. **DISPOSITION OF PROJECT.** The Issuer covenants that the property constituting the Project will not be sold or otherwise disposed in a transaction resulting in the receipt by the Issuer of cash or other compensation, unless the Issuer obtains an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel that such sale or other disposition will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds. For purposes of the foregoing, the portion of the property comprising personal property and disposed in the ordinary course shall not be treated as a transaction resulting in the receipt of cash or other compensation. For purposes hereof, the Issuer shall not be obligated to comply with this covenant if it obtains an opinion that such failure to comply will not adversely affect the excludability for federal income tax purposes from gross income of the interest.

Section 32. **TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD PROVISIONS.** (a) Final Accounting. The Issuer shall render a final accounting to the TWDB in reference to the total cost incurred by the Issuer for improvements and extensions to the System, together with a copy of "as built" plans of the project upon completion.

(b) Surplus Bond Proceeds. The Issuer shall use any surplus proceeds from the Bonds remaining after completion of the improvements, to ratably redeem, in inverse order of maturity, the Bonds owned by the TWDB.

(c) Annual Reports. Annual audits of the Issuer shall be delivered to the TWDB as long as the State of Texas owns any of the Bonds.

(d) Compliance with the TWDB's Rules and Regulations. The Issuer covenants to comply with the rules and regulations of the TWDB, and to maintain insurance on the Issuer's System in an amount sufficient to protect the interests of the TWDB in the project. The Issuer (i) covenants to maintain rates

and charges to the Contracting Parties sufficient to meet the debt service requirements on the Bonds and outstanding Parity Bonds and (ii) has required in existing Contracts and will require in any future Contract with any additional Contracting Party that such additional Contracting Party maintain rates and charges for its water and sewer system sufficient to pay the additional Contracting Party's obligations secured by and made payable from the revenues derived from the operation of its water and sewer system.

(e) Escrow Agreement. The Authorized Officer shall approve, execute and deliver an appropriate escrow agreement with a qualified and properly chartered trust institution. Proceeds of the Bonds required to be deposited under an escrow agreement shall be disposed of and released in accordance with TWDB Rules Relating to Financial Programs or as otherwise authorized and directed by the TWDB.

(f) Environmental Indemnification. The Issuer agrees to indemnify, hold harmless and protect the TWDB from any and all claims, causes of action or damages to the person or property of third parties arising from the sampling, analysis, transport and/or removal and disposition of any contaminated sewage sludge, contaminated sediments and/or contaminated media that may be generated by the Issuer, its contractors, consultants, agents, officials and employees as a result of activities relating to the project to the extent permitted by law.

(g) Special Covenants. Until the Bonds have been redeemed, paid or defeased, the Issuer will (i) implement any water conservation program required by the Board of the TWDB, (ii) comply with any special conditions specified by the Board of the TWDB in an environmental determination, (iii) maintain current, accurate and complete records and accounts necessary to demonstrate compliance with generally accepted government accounting standards and other financial assistance related legal and contractual provisions, (iv) immediately upon closing and delivery of the Bonds, the Issuer shall pay to the TWDB a 1.85% origination charge with respect to the Bonds calculated pursuant to the rules of the TWDB and (v) all laborers and mechanics employed by contractors and subcontractors for projects for which Bond proceeds will be used shall be paid wages at rates not less than those prevailing on projects of a similar character in the locality in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, and the U.S. Department of Labor's implementing regulations, and all project related contracts will mandate compliance with said Act.

(h) Collateral Requirements. The Issuer agrees that all uninvested and uninsured funds held pursuant to this Resolution shall be managed and collateralized as required by the Public Funds Collateral Act, Chapter 2257, Texas Government Code, as amended.

Section 33. EXPIRATION OF AUTHORIZATION. The authority of the Authorized Officer to sell the Bonds as described in Section 2(b) of this Resolution shall expire on the one-year anniversary date of the adoption of this Resolution by the Board.

Section 34. REPEAL OF CONFLICTING RESOLUTIONS. All resolutions and all parts of any resolutions which are in conflict or inconsistent with this Resolution are hereby repealed and shall be of no further force or effect to the extent of such conflict or inconsistency.

TAB 4

CERTIFICATE OF GENERAL MANAGER

I, the undersigned General Manager of the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer"), acting pursuant to the authority granted to me by resolution of the Board of Directors of the Issuer adopted on August 24, 2011 (the "Resolution") relating to the issuance of Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Bonds") hereby find, determine and commit on behalf of the Issuer to sell and deliver the Bonds to the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB") on the following terms:

1. The Bonds are hereby sold and shall be delivered to, and shall be initially registered in the name of, the TEXAS WATER DEVELOPMENT BOARD, for cash at a price of par less an origination fee paid to the TWDB of \$685,962.00.

2. The principal amount of the Bonds shall be \$37,765,000.

3. The Bonds shall be dated September 15, 2011, shall be numbered from R-1 upwards and shall mature and bear interest from their date of delivery to TWDB (i.e., the Date of Issuance) as follows:

<u>MATURITY DATE</u> <u>(February 1)</u>	<u>PRINCIPAL</u> <u>AMOUNT(\$)</u>	<u>INTEREST</u> <u>RATE(%)</u>
2014	290,000	0.000
2015	305,000	0.300
2016	1,195,000	0.550
2017	1,235,000	0.850
2018	1,280,000	1.200
2019	1,330,000	1.450
2020	1,385,000	1.700
2021	1,445,000	1.950
2022	1,510,000	2.100
2023	1,575,000	2.300
2024	1,650,000	2.450
2025	1,735,000	2.600
2026	1,815,000	2.700
2027	1,905,000	2.800
2028	2,005,000	2.950
2029	2,815,000	3.050
2030	2,935,000	3.150
2031	3,065,000	3.200
2032	3,200,000	3.250
2033	745,000	3.350
2034	785,000	3.400
2035	825,000	3.500
2036	865,000	3.550
2037	910,000	3.550
2038	960,000	3.550

4. Interest on the Bonds shall be payable February 1 and August 1 of each year, commencing February 1, 2012.

5. The Bonds scheduled to mature on and after February 1, 2023, shall be redeemable prior to their scheduled maturities, in whole or in part, and, if in part, in inverse order of maturity, at the option of the Issuer, on February 1, 2022 or on any date thereafter, for the principal amount thereof plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption, and without premium.

6. The Issuer will maintain rates and charges to the "Contracting Parties" (as defined in the Resolution) in amounts sufficient to meet the debt service requirements on the Bonds and other obligations of the Issuer that are supported by the contract payments of the Contracting Parties.

7. Immediately upon closing and delivery of the Bonds, the Issuer shall pay to the TWDB a 1.85% origination charge with respect to the Bonds calculated pursuant to the rules of the TWDB.

8. The Issuer will not discontinue the use of DTC without giving prior written notice to TWDB.

9. The Issuer hereby creates and establishes and shall maintain on the books of the Issuer a separate fund to be entitled the "Series 2011A Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Construction Fund" for use by the Issuer for payment of all lawful costs associated with the acquisition and construction of the Project as hereinbefore provided. Upon payment of all such costs, any moneys remaining on deposit in said Fund shall be transferred to the Interest and Sinking Fund. Amounts so deposited to the Interest and Sinking Fund shall be used in the manner described in Section 32(b) of the Resolution.

10. The Bonds shall be substantially in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A.

11. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds shall come from and be used and deposited as follows:

Sources of Funds:	Total (\$)
Principal Amount of Bonds	37,765,000.00
TOTAL SOURCES	37,765,000.00
Uses of Funds:	
TWDB origination fee	685,962.00
Costs of Issuance	550,000.00
Construction Fund	32,318,823.80
Capitalized interest	2,076,111.94
Reserve Fund	2,134,102.26
TOTAL USES	37,765,000.00

[The balance of this page is intentionally left blank.]

Witness my hand this August 25, 2011.

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Kevin Ward", is written over a horizontal line.

Kevin Ward
General Manager

EXHIBIT A

NO. R-	UNITED STATES OF AMERICA STATE OF TEXAS TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BOND, SERIES 2011A	PRINCIPAL AMOUNT \$ _____
--------	---	---------------------------------

<u>INTEREST RATE</u>	<u>DATE OF DELIVERY</u>	<u>MATURITY DATE</u>	<u>CUSIP NO.</u>
----------------------	-------------------------	----------------------	------------------

October 6, 2011

REGISTERED OWNER:

PRINCIPAL AMOUNT: DOLLARS

ON THE MATURITY DATE specified above, the TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS (the "Issuer"), being a governmental agency, and body corporate and politic of the State of Texas, hereby promises to pay to the Registered Owner set forth above, or registered assigns (hereinafter called the "registered owner") the principal amount set forth above, and to pay interest thereon from the Date of Delivery as set forth above, on February 1, 2012 and semiannually thereafter on each February 1 and August 1 to the maturity date specified above, or the date of redemption prior to maturity, at the interest rate per annum specified above, calculated on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months; except that if this Bond is required to be authenticated and the date of its authentication is later than the first Record Date (hereinafter defined), such principal amount shall bear interest from the interest payment date next preceding the date of authentication, unless such date of authentication is after any Record Date but on or before the next following interest payment date, in which case such principal amount shall bear interest from such next following interest payment date; provided, however, that if on the date of authentication hereof the interest on the Bond or Bonds, if any, for which this Bond is being exchanged or converted from is due but has not been paid, then this Bond shall bear interest from the date to which such interest has been paid in full.

THE PRINCIPAL OF AND INTEREST ON this Bond are payable in lawful money of the United States of America, without exchange or collection charges. The principal of this Bond shall be paid to the registered owner hereof upon presentation and surrender of this Bond at maturity or upon the date fixed for its redemption prior to maturity, at the principal corporate trust office of The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association, Dallas, Texas, which is the "Paying Agent/Registrar" for this Bond. The payment of interest on this Bond shall be made by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner hereof on each interest payment date by check or draft, dated as of such interest payment date, drawn by the Paying Agent/Registrar on, and payable solely from, funds of the Issuer required by the Resolution authorizing the issuance of this Bond (the "Bond Resolution") to be on deposit with the Paying Agent/Registrar for such purpose as hereinafter provided; and such check or draft shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, on each such interest payment date, to the registered owner hereof, at its address as it appeared on the fifteenth calendar day of the month next preceding each such date (the "Record Date") on the Registration Books kept by the Paying Agent/Registrar, as hereinafter described; provided, however, that for so long as the Texas Water Development Board ("TWDB") is the registered owner of the Bonds, all payments of principal and interest will be made in wire transfer form at no cost to the TWDB. In

addition, interest may be paid by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by, and at the risk and expense of, the registered owner. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Authority. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each owner of a Bond appearing on the Registration Books at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

ANY ACCRUED INTEREST due at maturity or upon the redemption of this Bond prior to maturity as provided herein shall be paid to the registered owner upon presentation and surrender of this Bond for redemption and payment at the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Issuer covenants with the registered owner of this Bond that on or before each principal payment date, interest payment date, and accrued interest payment date for this Bond it will make available to the Paying Agent/Registrar, from the "Interest and Redemption Fund" created by the Bond Resolution, the amounts required to provide for the payment, in immediately available funds, of all principal of and interest on the Bonds, when due.

IF THE DATE for the payment of the principal of or interest on this Bond shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday, or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the principal corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday, or day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

THIS BOND is one of a Series of Bonds dated September 15, 2011, authorized in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas in the principal amount of \$37,765,000, IN ORDER TO OBTAIN FUNDS TO PAY THE COSTS OF THE ACQUISITION AND CONSTRUCTION OF IMPROVEMENTS AND EXTENSIONS TO THE DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM.

ON FEBRUARY 1, 2022, or on any date thereafter, the Bonds of this Series may be redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, at the option of the Authority, with funds derived from any available and lawful source, as a whole, or in part in inverse order of maturity, and, if in part, the particular Bonds to be redeemed shall be selected and designated by the Authority, at the redemption price of the principal amount, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

AT LEAST 30 days prior to the date fixed for any redemption of Bonds or portions thereof prior to maturity a written notice of such redemption shall be sent by the Paying Agent/Registrar by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the registered owner of each Bond to be redeemed at its address as it appeared on the day such notice of redemption is mailed and to major securities depositories, national bond rating agencies and bond information services; provided, however, that the failure of the registered owner to receive such notice, or any defect therein or in the sending or mailing thereof, shall not affect the validity or effectiveness of the proceedings for the redemption of any Bond. By the date fixed for any such redemption, due provision shall be made with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed. If such written notice of redemption is sent and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided above, the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed thereby automatically shall be treated as redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, and they

shall not bear interest after the date fixed for redemption, and they shall not be regarded as being outstanding except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment. If a portion of any Bond shall be redeemed a substitute Bond or Bonds having the same maturity date, bearing interest at the same rate, in any denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000, at the written request of the registered owner, and in aggregate amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof, will be issued to the registered owner upon the surrender thereof for cancellation, at the expense of the Issuer, all as provided in the Bond Resolution.

IF AT THE TIME OF MAILING of notice of optional redemption there shall not have either been deposited with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent immediately available funds sufficient to redeem all the Bonds called for redemption, such notice must state that it is conditional, and is subject to the deposit of the redemption moneys with the Paying Agent/Registrar or legally authorized escrow agent at or prior to the redemption date, and such notice shall be of no effect unless such moneys are so deposited on or prior to the redemption date. If such redemption is not effectuated, the Paying Agent/Registrar shall, within 5 days thereafter, give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given that such moneys were not so received and shall rescind the redemption.

ALL BONDS OF THIS SERIES are issuable solely as fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, in the denomination of any integral multiple of \$5,000. As provided in the Bond Resolution, this Bond, or any unredeemed portion hereof, may, at the request of the registered owner or the assignee or assignees hereof, be assigned, transferred, converted into and exchanged for a like aggregate principal amount of fully registered Bonds, without interest coupons, payable to the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, having the same denomination or denominations in any integral multiple of \$5,000 as requested in writing by the appropriate registered owner, assignee or assignees, as the case may be, upon surrender of this Bond to the Paying Agent/Registrar for cancellation, all in accordance with the form and procedures set forth in the Bond Resolution. Among other requirements for such assignment and transfer, this Bond must be presented and surrendered to the Paying Agent/Registrar, together with proper instruments of assignment, in form and with guarantee of signatures satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar, evidencing assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof in any integral multiple of \$5,000 to the assignee or assignees in whose name or names this Bond or any such portion or portions hereof is or are to be registered. The form of Assignment printed or endorsed on this Bond may be executed by the registered owner to evidence the assignment hereof, but such method is not exclusive, and other instruments of assignment satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar may be used to evidence the assignment of this Bond or any portion or portions hereof from time to time by the registered owner. The Paying Agent/Registrar's reasonable standard or customary fees and charges for assigning, transferring, converting and exchanging any Bond or portion thereof will be paid by the Issuer. In any circumstance, any taxes or governmental charges required to be paid with respect thereto shall be paid by the one requesting such assignment, transfer, conversion or exchange, as a condition precedent to the exercise of such privilege. The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion, or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date, or, (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 30 days prior to its redemption date.

IN THE EVENT any Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is changed by the Issuer, resigns, or otherwise ceases to act as such, the Issuer has covenanted in the Bond Resolution that it promptly will appoint a competent and legally qualified substitute therefor, and cause written notice thereof to be mailed to the registered owners of the Bonds.

IT IS HEREBY certified, recited, and covenanted that this Bond has been duly and validly authorized, issued, sold, and delivered; that all acts, conditions, and things required or proper to be performed, exist, and be done precedent to or in the authorization, issuance, and delivery of this Bond have been performed, existed, and been done in accordance with law; that this Bond and other parity bonds, are special obligations of the Issuer payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the "Pledged Revenues", as defined in the Bond Resolution, which include payments and amounts derived by the Issuer from various contracts styled "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract," between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas.

THE ISSUER has reserved the right, subject to the restrictions stated or referred to in the Bond Resolution, to issue additional parity revenue bonds which also may be made payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues.

THE ISSUER also has reserved the right to amend the Bond Resolution with the approval of the owners of a majority in principal amount of all outstanding bonds secured by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution.

THE REGISTERED OWNER hereof shall never have the right to demand payment of this Bond or the interest hereon from taxes or from any source whatsoever other than specified in the Bond Resolution.

BY BECOMING the registered owner of this Bond, the registered owner thereby acknowledges all of the terms and provisions of the Bond Resolution, agrees to be bound by such terms and provisions, acknowledges that the Bond Resolution is duly recorded and available for inspection in the official minutes and records of the governing body of the Issuer, and agrees that the terms and provisions of this Bond and the Bond Resolution constitute a contract between each registered owner hereof and the Issuer.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this Bond to be signed with the facsimile signature of the President of the Board of Directors of the Issuer and countersigned with the facsimile signature of the Secretary of the Board of Directors of the Issuer, and has caused the official seal of the Issuer to be duly impressed, or placed in facsimile, on this Bond.

Secretary, Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas

President, Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas

(SEAL)

FORM OF PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR'S AUTHENTICATION CERTIFICATE

(To be executed if this Bond is not accompanied by an
executed Registration Certificate of the Comptroller
of Public Accounts of the State of Texas)

It is hereby certified that this Bond has been issued under the provisions of the Bond Resolution described in the text of this Bond; and that this Bond has been issued in conversion or replacement of, or in exchange for, a bond, bonds, or a portion of a bond or bonds of a Series which originally was approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Dated

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY,
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
Paying Agent/Registrar

By _____
Authorized Representative

FORM OF ASSIGNMENT

ASSIGNMENT

For value received, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

Please insert Social Security or Taxpayer
Identification Number of Transferee

(Please print or typewrite name and address,
including zip code of Transferee)

the within Bond and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints _____, attorney, to register the transfer of the within Bond on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature Guaranteed:

NOTICE: Signature(s) must be guaranteed by an eligible guarantor institution participating in a securities transfer association recognized signature guarantee program.

NOTICE: The signature above must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears upon the front of this Bond in every particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatsoever.

FORM OF COMPTROLLER'S REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE: REGISTER NO.

I hereby certify that this Bond has been examined, certified as to validity, and approved by the Attorney General of the State of Texas, and that this Bond has been registered by the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas.

Witness my signature and seal this

Comptroller of Public Accounts
of the State of Texas

(COMPTROLLER'S SEAL)

TAB 5

GENERAL CERTIFICATE

THE STATE OF TEXAS :
TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS :

We, the undersigned, hereby officially certify that we are the President and Secretary, respectively, of the Board of Directors of Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Authority" or the "Issuer"), and the General Manager of the Authority, and we further certify as follows:

1. That this certificate is executed for the benefit of the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the prospective owners of the proposed Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Bonds"), dated September 15, 2011, authorized by Resolution No. R-1329 adopted on August 24, 2011, by the Board of Directors of the Authority (the "Bond Resolution").

2. That Trinity River Authority of Texas is a conservation and reclamation district and political subdivision of the State of Texas, created pursuant to Chapter 518, Acts of the Regular Session of the 54th Legislature, 1955, as amended (the "Authority Act"), pursuant to Article 16, Section 59 of the Texas Constitution.

3. That other than for the payment of the Bonds, and any unpaid and unrefunded Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2000 (the "Series 2000 Bonds"), Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement and Refunding Bonds, Series 2003 (the "Series 2003 Bonds"), Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement Bonds, Series 2006 (the "Series 2006 Bonds"), Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Improvement Bonds, Series 2007 (the "Series 2007 Bonds"), Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2008 (the "Series 2008 Bonds"), Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2009 (the "Series 2009 Bonds"), Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011 (the "Series 2011 Bonds") and Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2011 (the "Series 2011 Refunding Bonds")(if issued)(collectively, the Series 2000 Bonds, the Series 2003 Bonds, the Series 2006 Bonds, the Series 2007 Bonds, the Series 2008 Bonds, the Series 2009 Bonds, the Series 2011 Bonds and the Series 2011 Refunding Bonds (if issued) are referred to as the "Outstanding Bonds"), the Pledged Revenues from the Contracts, as hereinafter defined, are not in any manner pledged to the payment of any debt or obligation.

4. That no litigation of any nature has ever been filed pertaining to, affecting, or contesting: (a) the issuance, delivery, payment, security, or validity of the Bonds or the Outstanding Bonds, (b) the validity of the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract", dated as of October 28, 1987 (the "Initial Contract") between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, and Roanoke, Texas, the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Supplemental Contract (City of Southlake and Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1)", dated as of April 27, 1988 (the "First Supplemental Contract") between the Issuer and the City of Southlake, Texas, and Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 1 (formerly, Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 1 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas), the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Second Supplemental Contract (City of Keller, Texas)", dated as of April 22, 1992 (the "Second Supplemental Contract") between the Issuer and the City of Keller, Texas, the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Third Supplemental Contract (Lake Turner Municipal Utility District No. 3)", dated as of August 24, 1994 (the "Third Supplemental Contract") between the Issuer and Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 3 (formerly, Lake Turner Municipal

Utility District No. 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas), the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fourth Supplemental Contract (Town of Flower Mound, Texas)", dated as of March 1, 2000 (the "Fourth Supplemental Contract") between the Issuer and the Town of Flower Mound, Texas, the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Fifth Supplemental Contract (Town of Westlake, Texas)", dated as of March 1, 2000 (the "Fifth Supplemental Contract") between the Issuer and the Town of Westlake, Texas, the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Sixth Supplemental Contract (Town of Northlake, Texas)", dated as of December 1, 2001 (the "Sixth Supplemental Contract") between the Issuer and the Town of Northlake, Texas and the "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Seventh Supplemental Contract (Town of Argyle, Texas)", dated as of December 6, 2006, and amended as of December 5, 2007 (the "Seventh Supplemental Contract"), between the Issuer and the Town of Argyle, Texas (collectively, the Initial Contract, First Supplemental Contract, Second Supplemental Contract, Third Supplemental Contract, Fourth Supplemental Contract, Fifth Supplemental Contract, Sixth Supplemental Contract and Seventh Supplemental Contract are herein referred to as the "Contracts" and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 are herein referred to as the "Contracting Parties"), (c) the title of the present members and officers of said Board of Directors of the Authority to their respective offices, or (d) the organization or corporate existence of the Authority or the boundaries thereof.

5. That the Contracts have been duly authorized by resolutions of the Board of Directors of the Authority, are in full force and effect, and said Contracts and resolutions have never been amended, revoked, or rescinded, and no default exists in connection therewith.

6. That no default exists in connection with any of the covenants, conditions or obligations in connection with the Outstanding Bonds or the resolutions authorizing said bonds, and the "Interest and Sinking Fund" and the "Reserve Fund" confirmed and maintained pursuant to said resolutions each contain the amount now required to be on deposit therein.

7. That the statements and information set forth in the Application to the Texas Water Development Board, pertaining to the Authority, the Contracting Parties, and the Bonds, and particularly the operating statements, debt service requirements, revenues, rates for water and sewer services (which rates, respectively, have been set by pertinent and applicable ordinances or resolutions now in effect), and other information set forth therein, are true and correct in all material respects, and the above statements and information concerning the Contracting Parties have been verified by the Authority from official documents and information furnished to the Authority by the Contracting Parties, respectively, specifically for inclusion in the aforesaid Application.

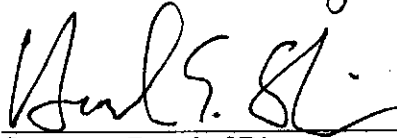
8. That, based upon an opinion of legal counsel to the Authority, the Contracts now in effect, pursuant to which the Contracting Parties, as defined in the Bond Resolution, are obligated to make payments to the Authority during each fiscal year (including during periods when services of the System may not be available to such Contracting Parties) in such amounts as shall be necessary to provide to the Authority Pledged Revenues are sufficient to pay when due all principal of and interest on the Bonds and any unpaid and unrefunded Outstanding Bonds to be outstanding after the issuance and delivery of the Bonds, and to make the deposits into the Reserve Fund as required under the resolutions authorizing the Bonds and the Outstanding Bonds.

9. That the Bond Resolution is in full force and effect and has not been amended or rescinded.

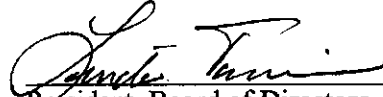
10. That J. Kevin Ward is the General Manager of the Authority, whose true and correct signature is affixed to this certificate.

[The balance of this page is intentionally left blank.]

SIGNED this August 25, 2011.



Secretary, Board of Directors



President, Board of Directors



General Manager

TAB 6

ESCROW AGREEMENT

THIS ESCROW AGREEMENT (the "Agreement"), dated as of September 15, 2011, made by and between the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Authority"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas, acting by and through its General Manager, and Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., as Escrow Agent (the "Escrow Agent") together with any successor in such capacity;

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, pursuant to a resolution finally adopted on August 24, 2011 (the "Resolution"), the Board of Directors of the Authority authorized the issuance of \$37,765,000 Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A, dated September 15, 2011 (the "Bonds"), for the purpose of the acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the Authority's Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System (the "Project"); and

WHEREAS, such Resolution also confirmed the sale of the Bonds to the Texas Water Development Board (the "TWDB"); and

WHEREAS, the Escrow Agent is a national bank located in the State of Texas, an insured depository institution with the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, ("FDIC"), has been designated a state depository institution by the Texas Office of the Comptroller and is otherwise qualified and empowered to enter into this Agreement, and hereby acknowledges its acceptance of the terms and provisions hereof; and

WHEREAS, a condition to the purchase of the Bonds by the TWDB is the deposit of the proceeds of sale (less amounts to pay costs of issuance) in escrow subject to being withdrawn only with the approval of the Executive Administrator of the TWDB or an authorized representative; provided, however, the funds can be transferred to different investments so long as all parties hereto consent to such transfer;

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual agreements herein contained and in consideration of the amount to be paid by the Authority to the Escrow Agent, as set forth on Exhibit A, the receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, and in order to secure the delivery of the Bonds, the parties hereto mutually undertake, promise and agree for themselves, their respective representatives and successors, as follows:

SECTION 1: ESCROW ACCOUNT. Upon the delivery of the Bonds described above, proceeds of sale (less amounts to pay costs of issuance) shall be deposited to the credit of a special escrow account maintained at the Escrow Agent on behalf of the Authority and the TWDB and shall not be commingled with other accounts or funds. The amounts received by the Escrow Agent under this Agreement shall not be considered as a banking deposit by the Authority, and the Escrow Agent shall have no right to title with respect thereto except as a fiduciary and Escrow Agent under the terms of this Agreement.

These escrowed funds shall be kept in a separate account entitled "Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A Escrow Account" and shall not be subject to warrants, drafts or checks drawn by the Authority but shall be disbursed or withdrawn to pay the costs of the project for which the Bonds were issued (the "Project Costs") in accordance with the Resolution and solely upon written authorization from the Executive Administrator, or his authorized representative. The Escrow Agent shall distribute to the Authority and to the Executive Administrator's staff of the TWDB the escrow account bank statements or trust account statements on a monthly basis.

SECTION 2: COLLATERAL. All cash deposited to the credit of such escrow account and any accrued interest in excess of the amounts insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and remaining

uninvested under the terms of this Agreement shall be continuously secured by a valid pledge of direct obligations of the United States of America or other collateral meeting the requirements of the Public Funds Collateral Act, Chapter 2257, Texas Government Code, as amended.

SECTION 3: INVESTMENTS. While funds are held in escrow, the Escrow Agent shall only invest escrowed funds in investments that are authorized by the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, as amended. It is the Authority's responsibility to direct the Escrow Agent to invest all public funds in a manner that is consistent not only with the Public Funds Investment Act but also with its own written investment policy.

SECTION 4: DISBURSEMENTS. The Escrow Agent shall not honor any disbursement from the escrow fund, or any portion thereof, unless and until it has been supplied with written approval and consent by the Executive Administrator of the TWDB or an authorized TWDB representative. However, no written approval and consent by the Executive Administrator shall be required if the disbursement involves transferring funds from one investment to another provided that all such investments are consistent with the requirements of the Public Funds Investment Act.

SECTION 5: UNEXPENDED FUNDS. Any sums remaining unexpended in the escrow account after completion of the Project, after the final accounting has been submitted to and approved by the TWDB, shall be disposed of pursuant to the provisions of the Resolution.

SECTION 6: CERTIFICATIONS. The Escrow Agent shall be authorized to accept and rely upon the certifications and documents furnished to the Escrow Agent by the Authority and shall not be liable for the payment of any funds made in reliance in good faith upon such certifications or other documents or approvals, as herein recited.

SECTION 7: LIABILITY OF ESCROW AGENT. To the extent permitted by law, the Escrow Agent shall not be liable for any act done or step taken or omitted by it or any mistake of fact or law, except for its negligence or default or failure in the performance of any obligation imposed upon it hereunder. The Escrow Agent shall not be responsible in any manner for any proceedings in connection with the Bonds or any recitation contained in the Bonds.

SECTION 8: RECORDS. The Escrow Agent will keep complete and correct books of record and account relating to the receipts, disbursements, allocations and application of the money deposited to the Escrow Fund, and investments of the Escrow Fund and all proceeds thereof. The records shall be available for inspection at reasonable hours and under reasonable conditions by the Authority and the TWDB.

SECTION 9: MERGER/CONSOLIDATION. In the event that the Escrow Agent merges or consolidates with another bank or sells or transfers substantially all of its assets or corporate trust business, then the successor bank shall be the successor Escrow Agent without the necessity of further action as long as the successor bank is a state or national bank as well as an FDIC-insured depository institution. The Escrow Agent must provide the TWDB with written notification within 30 days of acceptance of the merger, consolidation, or transfer. If the merger, consolidation or other transfer has occurred between state banks, the newly-created entity shall forward the certificate of merger or exchange issued by the Texas Department of Banking as well as the statement filed with the pertinent chartering authority, if applicable, to the TWDB within a reasonable time of such merger, consolidation or exchange.

SECTION 10: AMENDMENTS. This Agreement may be modified or amended from time to time as necessary with the written consent of the Authority, the Escrow Agent and the TWDB, but no such amendments shall increase the liabilities or responsibilities or diminish the rights of the Escrow Agent without its consent.

SECTION 11: TERMINATION. In the event that this Agreement is terminated by either the Authority or by the Escrow Agent, the Escrow Agent must report said termination in writing to the TWDB within 5 business days of such termination. The Authority is responsible for ensuring that the following criteria are satisfied in selecting the successor escrow agent and notifying the TWDB of the change in escrow agents: (a) the successor escrow agent must be an FDIC-insured state or national bank designated by the Texas Comptroller as a state depository; (b) the successor escrow agent must be retained prior to or at the time of the termination; (c) an escrow agreement must be executed by and between the Authority and the successor escrow agent and must contain the same or substantially similar terms and conditions as are present in this Agreement; and (d) the Authority must forward a copy of the executed escrow agreement with the successor escrow agent within 5 business days of said termination. No funds shall be released by the TWDB until it has received, reviewed and approved the escrow agreement with the successor escrow agent.

SECTION 12: EXPIRATION. This Agreement shall expire upon final transfer of the funds in the Escrow Account to the Authority.

SECTION 13: POINT OF CONTACT. The points of contact for the Escrow Agent and the TWDB are as follows:

Kushina White
Assistant Vice President
Wells Fargo Corporate Trust
MAC T5441-030
201 Main Street, Suite 301
Fort Worth, Texas 76102
817-334-7407 (Office)
817-885-8650 (Fax)
kushina.white@wellsfargo.com

Executive Administrator
Texas Water Development Board
1700 North Congress Avenue
Austin, Texas 78701

SECTION 14: CHOICE OF LAW. This Agreement shall be governed exclusively by the applicable laws of the State of Texas. Should a controversy arise, either party hereto may introduce the dispute into the Travis County District Court for adjudication thereof.


SECTION 15: ASSIGNABILITY. This Agreement shall not be assignable by the parties hereto, in whole or in part, and any attempted assignment shall be void and of no force and effect.

SECTION 16: ENTIRE AGREEMENT. This Agreement evidences the entire Escrow Agreement between the Escrow Agent and the Authority and supersedes any other agreements, whether oral or written, between the parties regarding the funds or the escrow account.

SECTION 17: VALIDITY OF PROVISIONS. If any term, covenant, condition or provision of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be invalid, void or unenforceable, the remainder of the provisions shall remain in full force and effect and shall in no way be affected, impaired or invalidated thereby.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement as of the day and year first above written.

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

By: 
General Manager

Address:
5300 S. Collins
Arlington, Texas 76018

WELLS FARGO BANK, N.A.
as Escrow Agent

By: 
Title: Assistant Vice President



EXHIBIT A

Greg Stites, Vice President
Wells Fargo Bank
Corporate Trust Services
111 Congress Avenue, Suite 2200
MAC T7044-220
Austin, TX 78701-4050
512-344-8640
greg.l.stites@wellsfargo.com

SCHEDULE OF FEES

\$37,765,000

**Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek
Regional Wastewater System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
Escrow - TWDB**

Escrow Agent Annual Administration Fee (if needed)	\$750.00 per series
---	----------------------------

For ordinary administration services by Escrow Agent, includes daily routine account management; investment transactions; cash transaction processing in accordance with the agreement; and mailing of trust account statements to all applicable parties. Float credit received by the bank for receiving funds that remain un-invested are deemed part of the Escrow Agent's compensation. The Administration fees are payable in advance, due at the time of Escrow Agreement execution. Fee will not be prorated in case of early termination.

Wells Fargo's bid is based on the following assumptions:

- Number of Escrow Receipts: 1
- Number of Escrow Accounts: 1
- **ALL FUNDS WILL BE RECEIVED FROM OR DISTRIBUTED TO A DOMESTIC ENTITY**

Extraordinary Fees and Expenses

We charge for out-of-pocket expenses in response to specific tasks assigned by the client. Therefore, we cannot anticipate what specific out-of-pocket items will be needed or what corresponding expenses will be incurred. Possible expenses would be, but are not limited to, tax reporting, establishment of trust accounts, express mail and messenger charges, travel expenses to attend closing or other meetings. Fees may be assessed for conversions or de-conversions. The proposal is based on the assumption of a one-time, full Book Entry Only Issuance closing at DTC. If the bonds are to be settled in an alternate form of issuance, we will provide an adjusted fee schedule. We will charge a redemption fee for periodic tenders, sinking fund, optional or extraordinary redemptions, based on the assessment appropriate at the time of the event.

This fee schedule is based upon the assumptions listed above which pertain to the responsibilities and risks involved in Wells Fargo undertaking the role of Escrow Agent. These assumptions are based on information provided to us as of the date of this fee schedule. Our fee schedule is subject to review and acceptance of the final documents. Should any of the assumptions, duties or responsibilities change, we reserve the right to affirm, modify or rescind our fee schedule.

Submitted: September 8, 2011
Pipeline: C488865

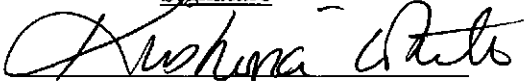
TAB 7

SIGNATURE IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHORITY CERTIFICATE OF
WELLS FARGO BANK, N.A.

I, the undersigned, Kathleen Wagner, do hereby certify that:

1. I am a duly elected and acting Vice-President of Wells Fargo Bank, N.A. (the "Bank"), and I am duly authorized to execute this certificate on its behalf.

2. That certain Escrow Agreement between the Trinity River Authority of Texas and the Bank, dated as of September 15, 2011 (the "Agreement") relating to the Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A, was duly executed on behalf of the Bank by Kushina White, who at the time of executing and attesting the same was and is now a duly elected and acting **Assistant Vice President** of the Bank and authorized to execute, attest and deliver the Agreement as evidenced by the resolutions or Bylaws contained in Exhibit "A". The resolutions or Bylaws contained in Exhibit "A" were duly adopted and are in full force and effect as of this date. There follows the names, offices and true and correct signatures of the aforesaid officers:

<u>Name</u>	<u>Office</u>	<u>Signature</u>
<u>Kushina White</u>	<u>Assistant Vice President</u>	<u></u>

WITNESS my hand this 9/8/2011.


Name: 
Title: Vice-President

EXHIBIT A



Wells Fargo Bank, N.A.
Corporate Trust Services

Certified Copy of General Signature
Resolution Relating to Execution
of Written Instruments

I Kathleen Wagner, an Assistant Secretary of Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, a national banking association organized under the laws of the United States of America (the "Bank"), hereby certify that:

The following is a true and correct extract from resolutions duly adopted by the Board of Directors of the Bank on November 25, 2003, and that no modification, amendment, rescission or revocation of such resolutions has occurred affecting such extract as of the date of this certificate, and that the resolutions remain in full force and effect on the date hereof:

RESOLVED, that agreements, instruments, or other documents, including amendments and modifications thereto, relating to or affecting the property or business and affairs of the Bank, whether acting for its own account or in a fiduciary or other representative capacity, may be executed in its name by the persons hereinafter authorized;

FURTHER RESOLVED, that for the purposes of these resolutions, "Executive Officer" shall mean any person specifically designated as an Executive Officer of the Bank by resolution of the Board of Directors, and "Signing Officer" shall mean the Chairman of the Board, the President, any Vice Chairman, any Executive Vice President, any Senior Vice President, the Treasurer, any Vice President, any Assistant Vice President, any person whose title includes the word "Officer" (e.g., Commercial Banking Officer, Personal Banking Officer, Trust Officer), or any other person whose title has been or is hereafter designated by the Board of Directors as a title for an officer of the Bank, and such officers are hereby authorized to sign agreements, instruments and other documents on behalf of the Bank in accordance with the signing authorities conferred in Parts A, B and C of these resolutions;

A. Executive Officers

FURTHER RESOLVED, that the Chairman, the President, any Vice Chairman, any Executive Vice President and any Executive Officer of the Bank, acting alone, may execute agreements, guaranties, instruments or other documents which such officer may deem necessary, proper or expedient to the conduct of the business of the Bank;

B. Vice Presidents and Above

FURTHER RESOLVED, that the Chairman, the President, any Vice Chairman, any Executive Vice President, any Senior Vice President and any Vice President, acting alone, may execute on behalf of the Bank:

Deeds, leases, assignments, bills of sale, purchase agreements and other instruments of conveyance to purchase, sell, lease or sublease to or from a third party real property, or any interest therein, for the Bank's own account; provided, however, that such agreements, instruments and other documents may also be signed as hereinafter provided with respect to real property acquired by the Bank in connection with collateral for a loan.

Bonds of indemnity and powers of attorney; provided, however, that proxies to vote stock in a corporation or to vote other interests in other legal entities and stock and bond powers may also be signed as hereinafter provided.

C. Signing Officers

FURTHER RESOLVED, that any Signing Officer, acting alone, may execute on behalf of the Bank, whether acting for its own account or in a fiduciary or other representative capacity:

* * *

Receipts for any funds or other property paid or delivered to the Bank.

Guaranties of signatures, whether appearing as endorsements of bonds, certificates of stock, or other securities, including without limitation medallion guaranties provided in connection with a medallion stamp, or otherwise.

* * *

Agreements and proposals to provide services to or receive services from third parties.

* * *

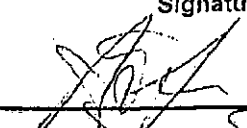
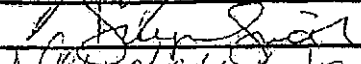
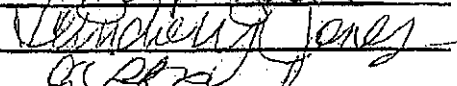
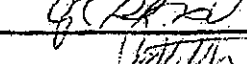
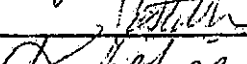
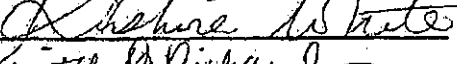
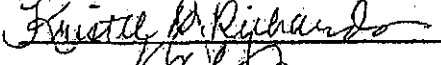
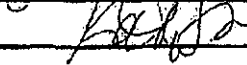
Trust indentures, declarations of trust, trust and agency agreements, pooling and servicing agreements, fiscal and paying agency agreements, acceptances thereof, consents thereto and any similar agreements, however denominated, to which the Bank is a party in a fiduciary or other representative capacity; certificates of authentication or other indicia of valid issuance with respect to bonds, notes, debentures and other securities or obligations issued under any indenture, mortgage, trust or other agreement; certificates for securities deposited, interim certificates and other certificates for and on behalf of the Bank as depository or agent; countersignatures of stocks, bonds, notes, debentures, voting trust certificates, participation certificates and other certificates, instruments, obligations or other securities on behalf of the Bank as trustee, fiscal and paying agent, transfer agent, registrar or in another similar capacity; and certificates of cancellation and cremation of stocks, bonds, debentures or other securities.

* * *

FURTHER RESOLVED, that the signature of the Secretary or of any Assistant Secretary of the Bank shall be required to certify any resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Bank or any committee thereof, the incumbency, title or signature of any officer of the Bank and any designation of authority under these resolutions or otherwise, and the Secretary or any Assistant Secretary of the Bank may also certify any records or other documents created in the ordinary course of the business of the Bank.

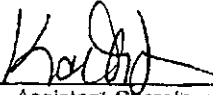
I further certify that on the date below, the following named persons were duly appointed, qualified and acting Signing Officers of Wells Fargo Bank, N.A., that their correct title

and genuine signature appears beside their name, and that on said date they were duly authorized to act on behalf of the Bank as set forth in the foregoing resolution:

Name	Title	Signature
Patrick Giordano	Vice President	
Dayna Smith	Assistant Vice President	
Sandra Jones	Vice President	
Amy C. Perkins	Vice President	
John C. Stohlmann	Vice President	
Kushina White	Assistant Vice President	
Kristel D. Richards	Vice President	
Kathleen Wagner	Vice President	

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have hereunto signed my name this

09/09/11



Assistant Secretary

*** Redacted [Indicates portions of the resolutions have intentionally been omitted because the sections are not relevant to the transaction for which this certification has been requested.]

TAB 8

SIGNATURE IDENTIFICATION AND NO-LITIGATION CERTIFICATE

THE STATE OF TEXAS

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

:
:

We, the undersigned officers of Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer"), hereby certify as follows:

(a) That this certificate is executed and delivered with reference to Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A, dated September 15, 2011, in the principal amount of \$37,765,000 (the "Bonds").

(b) That we officially executed and signed said Bonds with our manual signatures or by causing facsimiles of our manual signatures to be placed on each of said Bonds, and we hereby adopt said facsimile signatures as our own, respectively, and declare that said facsimile signatures constitute our signatures the same as if we had manually signed each of said Bonds.

(c) That said Bonds are substantially in the form, and have been duly executed and signed in the manner, prescribed in the Resolution authorizing the issuance of said Bonds.

(d) That at the time we so executed and signed said Bonds we were, and at the time of executing this certificate we are, the duly chosen, qualified and acting officers indicated therein, and authorized to execute the same.

(e) That no litigation of any nature has been filed or is now pending to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of said Bonds, or which would affect the provision made for their payment or security, or in any manner questioning the proceedings or authority concerning the issuance of the Bonds, and that so far as we know and believe no such litigation is threatened.

(f) That neither the corporate existence nor boundaries of the Issuer is being contested, that no litigation has been filed or is now pending which would affect the authority of the officers of the Issuer to issue, execute, sign, and deliver said Bonds, and that no authority or proceedings for the issuance of said Bonds have been repealed, revoked or rescinded.

(g) That we have caused the official seal of the Issuer to be impressed or placed in facsimile on said Bonds; and said seal on said Bonds has been duly adopted as, and is hereby declared to be, the official seal of the Issuer.

(h) The Attorney General of Texas is hereby authorized and directed to date this certificate concurrently with the date of approval of the Bonds. If any litigation or contest should develop pertaining to the Bonds or any other matters covered by this certificate, the undersigned will notify you thereof immediately by telephone. With this assurance the Attorney General can rely on the absence of any such litigation or contest, and on the veracity and currency of this certificate, at the time he approves the Bonds, unless he is notified otherwise as aforesaid.

EXECUTED and delivered this

OCT 06 2011

MANUAL SIGNATURES

[Signature]
[Signature]

OFFICIAL TITLES

President, Board of Directors

Secretary, Board of Directors

Before me, on this day personally appeared the foregoing individuals, known to me to be the persons whose names are subscribed to the foregoing instrument.

Given under my hand and seal of office this 24th of Aug., 2011.



(Notary Seal)

Sheila J. Murphy
Notary Public

TAB 9

RECEIPT FOR PROCEEDS

THE STATE OF TEXAS

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

:

:

The undersigned hereby certifies as follows:

(a) That this certificate is executed and delivered with reference to

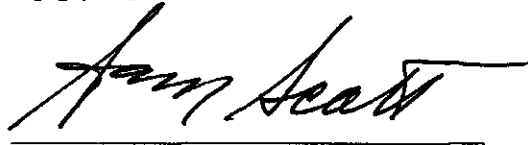
Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A, authorized by a resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Issuer on August 24, 2011 (the "Bonds").

(b) That the undersigned is duly qualified to execute this receipt on behalf of the issuer of said Bonds.

(c) That said Bonds have been duly delivered to the purchasers thereof.

(d) That said Bonds have been paid for in full by said purchasers concurrently with the delivery of this certificate, and the issuer of said Bonds has received, and hereby acknowledges receipt of, the agreed purchase price for said Bonds.

EXECUTED and delivered this OCT 06 2011



A handwritten signature in cursive script, appearing to read "Amy Scott", is written over a horizontal line.

TAB 10

FEDERAL TAX CERTIFICATE

1. In General.

1.1. The undersigned is the General Manager of Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer").

1.2. This Certificate is executed for the purpose of establishing the reasonable expectations of the Issuer as to future events regarding the Issuer's Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Bonds"). The Bonds are being issued pursuant to a resolution of the Issuer (the "Resolution") adopted on the date of sale of the Bonds. The Resolution is incorporated herein by reference.

1.3. To the best of the undersigned's knowledge, information and belief, the expectations contained in this Federal Tax Certificate are reasonable.

1.4. The undersigned is an officer of the Issuer delegated with the responsibility of issuing and delivering the Bonds.

1.5. The undersigned is not aware of any facts or circumstances that would cause him to question the accuracy of the representations made by First Southwest Company (the "Financial Advisor") in Subsection 5.3 of this Certificate and with respect to the Schedules attached hereto as Exhibit "C".

2. The Purpose of the Bonds and Useful Lives of Projects.

2.1. The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Resolution (a) to provide for the payment of costs of issuing the Bonds (b) for acquisition and construction of improvements and extensions to the Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System (the "Projects") and (c) to deposit funds in the reserve fund (the "Reserve Fund") established by the Resolution.

2.2. The Issuer expects that the aggregate useful lives of the Projects exceed 24 years from the later of the date the Projects are placed in service or the date on which the Bonds are issued.

2.3. All earnings, such as interest and dividends, received from the investment of the proceeds of the Bonds during the period of acquisition and construction of the Projects and not used to pay interest on the Bonds, will be used to pay the costs of the Projects, unless required to be rebated and paid to the United States in accordance with section 148(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). The proceeds of the Bonds, together with any investment earnings thereon, are expected not to exceed the amount necessary for the governmental purpose of the Bonds. The Issuer expects that no disposition proceeds will arise in connection with the Projects or the Bonds.

3. Expenditure of Bond Proceeds and Use of Projects.

3.1. The Issuer will incur, within six months after the date of issue of the Bonds, a binding obligation to commence the Projects, either by entering into contracts for the construction of the Projects or by entering into contracts for architectural or engineering services for such Projects, or contracts for the development, purchase of construction materials, or purchase of equipment, for the Projects, with the amount to be paid under such contracts to be in excess of five percent of the proceeds which are estimated to be used for the cost of the Projects.

3.2. After entering into binding obligations, work on such Projects will proceed promptly with due diligence to completion.

3.3. All original proceeds derived from the sale of the Bonds to be applied to the Projects and all investment earnings thereon (other than any amounts required to be rebated to the United States pursuant to section 148(f) of the Code) will be expended for the Projects no later than a date which is three years after the date of issue of bonds by the Texas Water Development Board.

3.4. The payment of legal and underwriting costs associated with the issuance of the Bonds is not contingent on the loans to be made and the Issuer expects that at least 95 percent of the costs associated with the issuance of the Bonds will be paid within 180 days of the date hereof. The Issuer will account for the expenditure of Bond proceeds (including investment earnings thereon) for the purposes described in Section 2 herein on its books and records by allocating such proceeds to expenditures within 18 months of the later of the date that (i) the expenditure is made, or (ii) the purposes for which the Bonds are issued have been accomplished. The foregoing notwithstanding, the Issuer will expend such sale proceeds more than 60 days after the earlier of (i) the fifth anniversary of the delivery of the Bonds, or (ii) the date the Bonds are retired, unless the Issuer obtains an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel that such expenditure will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds.

3.5. Only Project costs paid or incurred by the Issuer within 60 days prior to the date the Issuer approved the funding of the Project (the "60-day period") through its declaration of official intent ("Qualified Costs") will be paid or reimbursed with Bond proceeds. For this purpose Qualified Costs also include preliminary expenditures, incurred prior to the 60-day period before the approval of the Issuer through its declaration of official intent, up to an amount not in excess of 20 percent of the aggregate amount of the Bonds. No Qualified Cost represents the cost of property or land acquired from a related party.

3.6. The Issuer will not invest the proceeds prior to such expenditure in any guaranteed investment contract or other non-purpose investment with a substantially guaranteed yield for a period equal to or greater than four years.

3.7. Other than members of the general public and the Contracting Parties, the Issuer expects that throughout the lesser of the term of the Bonds, or the useful lives of the Projects, the only user of the Projects will be the Issuer or the Issuer's employees and agents. The Issuer will be the manager of the Projects. In no event will the proceeds of the Bonds or facilities financed therewith be used for private business use in an amount greater than \$15 million. The Issuer does not expect it or the Contracting Parties to enter into long-term sales of output from the Projects and sales of output will be made on the basis of generally-applicable and uniformly applied rates. The Issuer or the Contracting Parties may apply different rates for different classes of customers, including volume purchasers, which are reasonable and customary.

3.8. Except as stated below, the Issuer expects not to sell or otherwise dispose of property constituting the Projects prior to the earlier of the end of such property's useful life or the final maturity of the Bonds. The Resolution provides that the Issuer will not sell or otherwise dispose of the Projects unless the Issuer receives an opinion of nationally-recognized bond counsel that such sale or other disposition will not adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the Bonds.

3.9. For purposes of Subsection 3.8 hereof, the Issuer has not included the portion of the Projects comprised of personal property that is disposed in the ordinary course at a price that is expected to be less than 25 percent of the original purchase price. The Issuer, upon any disposition of such property, will transfer the receipts from the disposition of such property to the general operating fund and expend such receipts within six months for other governmental programs.

4. Interest and Sinking Fund.

4.1. A separate and special Interest and Sinking Fund has been created and established, other than as described herein, solely to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds (the "Bona Fide Debt Service Portion"). The Bona Fide Debt Service Portion constitutes a fund that is used primarily to achieve a proper matching of revenues and debt service within each bond year. Such portion will be completely depleted at least once each year except for an amount not in excess of the greater of (a) one-twelfth of the debt service on the Bonds for the previous year, or (b) the previous year's earnings on such portion of the Interest and Sinking Fund. Amounts deposited in the Interest and Sinking Fund constituting the Bona Fide Debt Service Portion will be spent within a thirteen-month period beginning on the date of deposit, and any amount received from the investment of money held in the Interest and Sinking Fund will be spent within a one-year period beginning on the date of receipt.

4.2. Any money deposited in the Interest and Sinking Fund and any amounts received from the investment thereof that accumulate and remain on hand therein after thirteen months from the date of deposit of any such money or one year after the receipt of any such amounts from the investment thereof shall constitute a separate portion of the Interest and Sinking Fund. The yield on any investments allocable to the portion of the Interest and Sinking Fund exceeding the sum of (a) the Bona Fide Debt Service Portion and (b) an amount equal to the lesser of five percent of the sale and investment proceeds of the Bonds or \$100,000 will be restricted to a yield that does not exceed the yield on the Bonds.

5. Reserve Fund.

5.1. Funds on deposit in the Reserve Fund are held in trust for the benefit of the holders of the Bonds. If on any interest payment or maturity date, the Interest and Sinking Fund does not contain an amount sufficient to make debt service payments on the Bonds, the Issuer is required to transfer money from the Reserve Fund to the Interest and Sinking Fund in an amount sufficient to make such payments.

5.2. The present value of the investments deposited to the Reserve Fund and allocable to the Bonds that will be invested at a yield higher than the yield on the Bonds will not, as of any date, exceed an aggregate amount which equals the lesser of (a) 10 percent of the stated principal amount (or, in the case of a discount, the issue price) of the Bonds, (b) 1.25 of the average annual debt service on the Bonds, or (c) maximum annual debt service on the Bonds.

5.3. Based on the recommendation of the Financial Advisor to the Issuer, the amount deposited to the Reserve Fund, if any, does not exceed that amount which is reasonably prudent to be maintained to secure the timely payment of debt service in the event of periodic fluctuations in revenues of the Issuer. Amounts deposited in the Reserve Fund from proceeds received from the sale of the Bonds do not exceed 10 percent of the issue price of the Bonds.

6. Revenue Fund.

6.1. The Resolution creates a Revenue Fund into which certain revenues of the Issuer are deposited. Amounts on deposit in the Revenue Fund are transferred and used in the manner required by the Resolution.

6.2. Other than moneys in the Revenue Fund that are transferred to the Interest and Sinking Fund, the moneys in the Revenue Fund are reasonably expected not to be used to pay the principal of and interest on the

Bonds. There will be no assurance that such moneys will be available to meet debt service if the Issuer encounters financial difficulty. Amounts in the Revenue Fund will be invested without yield restriction.

7. Contingency Fund.

7.1. The Resolution creates a Contingency Fund which will be used solely for the purposes described in the Resolution.

7.2. Moneys in the Contingency Fund are reasonably expected not to be used to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. There will be no assurance that such amounts will be available to meet debt services if the Issuer encounters financial difficulty. Amounts in the Contingency and Improvement Fund will be invested without yield restriction.

8. Yield.

8.1. The Bonds are being purchased by the Texas Water Development Board at a purchase price of 98.15 percent of the stated principal amount thereof.

8.2. The Issuer has not entered into any qualified guarantee or qualified hedge with respect to the Bonds. The yield on the Bonds will not be affected by subsequent unexpected events, except to the extent provided in section 1.148-4(h)(3) of the Treasury Regulations when and if the Issuer enters into a qualified hedge or into any transaction transferring, waiving or modifying any right that is part of the terms of any Bond. The Issuer will consult with nationally recognized bond counsel prior to entering into any of the foregoing transactions.

9. Invested Sinking Fund Proceeds, Replacement Proceeds.

9.1. The Issuer has, in addition to the moneys received from the sale of the Bonds, certain other moneys that are invested in various funds which are pledged for various purposes. These other funds are not available to accomplish the purposes described in Section 2 of this Certificate.

9.2. Other than the Interest and Sinking Fund and the Reserve Fund, there are, and will be, no other funds or accounts established, or to be established, by or on behalf of the Issuer that (a) are reasonably expected to be used, or to generate earnings to be used, to pay debt service on the Bonds, or (b) are reserved or pledged as collateral for payment of debt service on the Bonds and for which there is reasonable assurance that amounts therein will be available to pay such debt service if the Issuer encounters financial difficulties. Accordingly, there are no other amounts constituting "gross proceeds" of the Bonds, within the meaning of section 148 of the Code.

10. Other Obligations.

There are no other obligations of the Issuer, that (a) are sold at substantially the same time as the Bonds, i.e., within 15 days of the date of sale of the Bonds, (b) are sold pursuant to a common plan of financing with the Bonds, and (c) will be payable from the same source of funds as the Bonds.

11. Federal Tax Audit Responsibilities.

The Issuer acknowledges that in the event of an examination by the Internal Revenue Service (the "Service") to determine compliance of the Bonds with the provisions of the Code as they relate to tax-exempt obligations, the Issuer will respond, and will direct its agents and assigns to respond, in a commercially reasonable manner to any inquiries from the Service in connection with such an examination. The Issuer understands and agrees that the examination may be subject to public disclosure under applicable Texas law.

12. Record Retention.

The Issuer has covenanted in the Resolution that it will comply with the requirements of the Code relating to the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds under section 103 of the Code. The Service has determined that certain materials, records and information should be retained by the issuers of tax-exempt obligations for the purpose of enabling the Service to confirm the exclusion of the interest on such obligations under section 103 of the Code. **ACCORDINGLY, THE ISSUER SHALL TAKE STEPS TO ENSURE THAT ALL MATERIALS, RECORDS AND INFORMATION NECESSARY TO CONFIRM THE EXCLUSION OF THE INTEREST ON THE BONDS UNDER SECTION 103 OF THE CODE ARE RETAINED FOR THE PERIOD BEGINNING ON THE ISSUE DATE OF THE BONDS AND ENDING THREE YEARS AFTER THE DATE THE BONDS ARE RETIRED.** The Issuer acknowledges receipt of the letter attached hereto as Exhibit "B" which, in part, discusses specific guidance by the Service with respect to the retention of records relating to tax-exempt bond transaction. The Issuer also acknowledges that letter does not constitute an opinion of Bond Counsel as to the proper record retention policy applicable to any specific transaction.


13. Rebate to United States.

The Issuer has covenanted in the Resolution that it will comply with the requirements of the Code, including section 148(f) of the Code, relating to the required rebate to the United States. Specifically, the Issuer will take steps to ensure that all earnings on gross proceeds of the Bonds in excess of the yield on the Bonds required to be rebated to the United States will be timely paid to the United States. The Issuer acknowledges receipt of the memorandum attached hereto as Exhibit "A" which discusses regulations promulgated pursuant to section 148(f) of the Code. This memorandum does not constitute an opinion of Bond Counsel as to the proper federal tax or accounting treatment of any specific transaction.

[THE REMAINDER OF THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

DATED as of October 6, 2011.

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

By: 
General Manager

Trinity River Authority of Texas, Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A

The undersigned represents that, to the best of the undersigned's knowledge, information and belief, the representations contained in Subsection 5.3 of this Federal Tax Certificate and the Schedules attached hereto as Exhibit "C" are, as of October 6, 2011, accurate and complete. We understand that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in this Federal Tax Certificate and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. (i) in connection with rendering its opinion to the Issuer that interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income thereof for income tax purposes, and (ii) for purposes of completing the IRS Form 8038-G. The undersigned is certifying only as to facts in existence on the date hereof. Nothing herein represents the undersigned's interpretation of any laws or the application of any laws to these facts.

FIRST SOUTHWEST COMPANY

By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

Exhibit "A"

LAW OFFICES

McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.

600 CONGRESS AVENUE
1250 ONE AMERICAN CENTER

AUSTIN, TEXAS 78701-3248

TELEPHONE: (512) 478-3805
FACSIMILE: (512) 472-0871

717 NORTH HARWOOD

NINTH FLOOR

DALLAS, TEXAS 75201-4687

TELEPHONE: (214) 754-9200
FACSIMILE: (214) 754-9250

700 N. ST. MARY'S STREET

1525 ONE RIVERWALK PLACE

SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS 78205-3503

TELEPHONE: (210) 225-2800
FACSIMILE: (210) 226-2884

January 1, 2006

ARBITRAGE REBATE REGULATIONS¹

The arbitrage rebate requirements set forth in section 148(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code") generally provide that in order for interest on any issue of bonds¹ to be excluded from gross income (i.e., tax-exempt) the issuer must rebate to the United States the sum of, (1) the excess of the amount earned on all "nonpurpose investments" acquired with "gross proceeds" of the issue over the amount which would have been earned if such investments had been invested at a yield equal to the yield on the issue, and (2) the earnings on such excess earnings.

On June 18, 1993, the U.S. Treasury Department promulgated regulations relating to the computation of arbitrage rebate and the rebate exceptions. These regulations, which replace the previously-published regulations promulgated on May 15, 1989, and on May 18, 1992, are effective for bonds issued after June 30, 1993. This memorandum was prepared by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. and provides a general discussion of these arbitrage rebate regulations. This memorandum does not otherwise discuss the general arbitrage regulations, other than as they may incidentally relate to rebate. This memorandum also does not attempt to provide an exhaustive discussion of the arbitrage rebate regulations and should not be considered advice with respect to the arbitrage rebate requirements as applied to any individual or governmental unit or any specific transaction. Any tax advice contained in this memorandum is of a general nature and is not intended to be used, and should not be used, by any person to avoid penalties under the Code.

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. remains available to provide legal advice to issuers with respect to the provisions of these tax regulations but recommends that issuers seek competent financial and accounting assistance in calculating the amount of such issuer's rebate liability under section 148(f) of the Code and in making elections to apply the rebate exceptions.

¹ In this memorandum the word "bond" is defined to include any bond, note, certificate, financing lease or other obligation of an issuer.

Effective Dates

The regulations promulgated on June 18, 1993, generally apply to bonds delivered after June 30, 1993, although they do permit an issuer to elect to apply the rules to bonds issued prior to that date. The temporary regulations adopted by the U.S. Treasury Department in 1989 and 1992 incorporated the same effective dates which generally apply for purposes of section 148(f) of the Code. As such, the previous versions of the rebate regulations generally applied to bonds issued between August 1986 and June 30, 1993 (or, with an election, to bonds issued prior to August 15, 1993). The statutory provisions of section 148(f) of the Code, other than the exception for construction issues, apply to all bonds issued after August 15, 1986, (for private activity bonds) and August 31, 1986, (for governmental public purpose bonds). The statutory exception to rebate applicable for construction issues generally applies if such issue is delivered after December 19, 1989.

The regulations provide numerous transitional rules for bonds sold prior to July 1, 1993. Moreover, since, under prior law, rules were previously published with respect to industrial development bonds and mortgage revenue bonds, the transitional rules contained in these regulations permit an issuer to elect to apply certain of these rules for computing rebate on pre-1986 bonds. The regulations provide for numerous elections which would permit an issuer to apply the rules (other than 18-month spending exception) to bonds which were issued prior to July 1, 1993 and remain outstanding on June 30, 1993. Due to the complexity of the regulations, it is impossible to discuss in this memorandum all circumstances for which specific elections are provided. If an issuer prefers to use these final version of rebate regulations in lieu of the computational method stated under prior law (e.g., due to prior redemption) or the regulations, please contact McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. for advice as to the availability of such options.

Future Value Computation Method

The regulations employ an actuarial method for computing the rebate amount based on the future value of the investment receipts (i.e., earnings) and payments. The rebate method employs a two-step computation to determine the amount of the rebate payment. First, the issuer determines the bond yield. Second, the issuer determines the arbitrage rebate amount. The regulations require that the computations be made at the end of each five-year period and upon final maturity of the issue (the "computation dates"). **THE FINAL MATURITY DATE WILL ACCELERATE IN CIRCUMSTANCES IN WHICH THE BONDS ARE OPTIONALLY REDEEMED PRIOR TO MATURITY. AS SUCH, IF BONDS ARE REFUNDED OR OTHERWISE REDEEMED, THE REBATE MAY BE DUE EARLIER THAN INITIALLY PROJECTED.** In order to accommodate accurate record-keeping and to assure that sufficient amounts will be available for the payment of arbitrage rebate liability, however, we recommend that the computations be performed at least annually. Please refer to other materials provided by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. relating to federal tax rules regarding record retention.

Under the future value method, the amount of rebate is determined by compounding the aggregate earnings on all the investments from the date of receipt by the issuer to the computation date. Similarly, a payment for an investment is future valued from the date that the payment is made to the computation date. The receipts and payments are future valued at a discount rate equal to the yield on the bonds. The rebatable arbitrage, as of any

computation date, is equal to the excess of the (1) future value of all receipts from investments (i.e., earnings), over (2) the future value of all payments.

The following example is provided in the regulations to illustrate how arbitrage rebate is computed under the future value method for a fixed-yield bond:

"On January 1, 1994, City A issues a fixed yield issue and invests all the sale proceeds of the issue (\$49 million). There are no other gross proceeds. The issue has a yield of 7.0000 percent per year compounded semiannually (computed on a 30 day month/360 day year basis). City A receives amounts from the investment and immediately expends them for the governmental purpose of the issue as follows:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Amount</u>
2/1/1994	\$ 3,000,000
4/1/1994	5,000,000
6/1/1994	14,000,000
9/1/1994	20,000,000
7/1/1995	10,000,000

City A selects a bond year ending on January 1, and thus the first required computation date is January 1, 1999. The rebate amount as of this date is computed by determining the future value of the receipts and the payments for the investment. The compounding interval is each 6-month (or shorter) period and the 30 day month/360 day year basis is used because these conventions were used to compute yield on the issue. The future value of these amounts, plus the computation credit, as of January 1, 1999, is:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Receipts (Payments)</u>	<u>FY (7.0000 percent)</u>
01/1/1994	(\$49,000,000)	(\$69,119,339)
02/1/1994	3,000,000	4,207,602
04/1/1994	5,000,000	6,932,715
06/1/1994	14,000,000	19,190,277
09/1/1994	20,000,000	26,947,162
01/1/1995	(1,000)	(1,317)
07/1/1995	10,000,000	12,722,793
01/1/1996	(1,000)	(1,229)
Rebate amount (01/01/1999)		<u>\$878,664"</u>

General Method for Computing Yield on Bonds

In general, the term "yield," with respect to a bond, means the discount rate that when used in computing the present value of all unconditionally due payments of principal and interest and all of the payments for a qualified guarantee produces an amount equal to the issue price of the bond. The term "issue price" has the same meaning as provided in sections

1273 and 1274 of the Code. That is, if bonds are publicly offered (i.e., sold by the issuer to a bond house, broker or similar person acting in the capacity of underwriter or wholesaler), the issue price of each bond is determined on the basis of the initial offering price to the public (not to the aforementioned intermediaries) at which price a substantial amount of such bond was sold to the public (not to the aforementioned intermediaries). The "issue price" is separately determined for each bond (i.e., maturity) comprising an issue.

The regulations also provide varying periods for computing yield on the bonds depending on the method by which the interest payment is determined. Thus, for example, yield on an issue of bonds sold with variable interest rates (i.e., interest rates which are reset periodically based on changes in market) is computed separately for each annual period ending on the first anniversary of the delivery date that the issue is outstanding. In effect, yield on a variable yield issue is determined on each computation date by "looking back" at the interest payments for such period. The regulations, however, permit an issuer of a variable-yield issue to elect to compute the yield for annual periods ending on any date in order to permit a matching of such yield to the expenditure of the proceeds. Any such election must be made in writing, is irrevocable, and must be made no later than the earlier of (1) the fifth anniversary date, or (2) the final maturity date.

Yield on a fixed interest rate issue (i.e., an issue of bonds the interest rate on which is determined as of the date of the issue) is computed over the entire term of the issue. Issuers of fixed-yield issues generally use the yield computed as of the date of issue for all rebate computations. Such yield on fixed-yield issues generally is recomputed only if (1) the issue is sold at a substantial premium, may be retired within five years of the date of delivery, and such date is earlier than its scheduled maturity date, or (2) the issue is a stepped-coupon bond. In such cases, the regulations require the issuer to recompute the yield on such issues by taking into account the early retirement value of the bonds. Similarly, recomputation may occur in circumstances in which the issuer or bondholder modify or waive certain terms of, or rights with respect to, the issue or in sophisticated hedging transactions. **IN SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES, ISSUERS ARE ADVISED TO CONSULT McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P. TO ADDRESS THE FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THESE TRANSACTIONS.**

For purposes of determining the principal or redemption payments on a bond, different rules are used for fixed-rate and variable-rate bonds. The payment is computed separately on each maturity of bonds rather than on the issue as a whole. In certain circumstances, the yield on the bond is determined by assuming that principal on the bond is paid as scheduled and that the bond is retired on the final maturity date for the stated retirement price. For bonds subject to early redemption or stepped-coupon bonds, described above, or for bonds subject to mandatory early redemption, the yield is computed assuming the bonds are paid on the early redemption date for an amount equal to their value.

Premiums paid to guarantee the payment of debt service on bonds are taken into account in computing the yield on the bond. Payments for guarantees are taken into account by treating such premiums as the payment of interest on the bonds. This treatment, in effect, raises the yield on the bond, thereby permitting the issuer to recover such fee with excess earnings.

The guarantee must be an unconditional obligation of the guarantor enforceable by the bondholder for the payment of principal or interest on the bond or the tender price of a tender bond. The guarantee may be in the form of an insurance policy, surety bond, irrevocable letter or line of credit, or standby purchase agreement. Importantly, the guarantor must be legally entitled to full reimbursement for any payment made on the guarantee either immediately or upon commercially reasonable repayment terms. The guarantor may not be a co-obligor of the bonds or a user of more than 10 percent of the proceeds of the bonds.

Payments for the guarantee may not exceed a reasonable charge for the transfer of credit risk. This reasonable charge requirement is not satisfied unless it is reasonably expected that the guarantee will result in a net present value savings on the bond (i.e., the premium does not exceed the present value of the interest savings resulting by virtue of the guarantee). If the guarantee is entered into after June 14, 1989, then any fees charged for the nonguarantee services must be separately stated or the guarantee fee is not recoverable.

The regulations also treat certain "hedging" transactions in a manner similar to qualified guarantees. "Hedges" are contracts, e.g., interest rate swaps, futures contracts or options, which are intended to reduce the risk of interest rate fluctuations. Hedges and other financial derivatives are sophisticated and ever-evolving financial products with which a memorandum, such as this, can not readily deal. **IN SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES, ISSUERS ARE ADVISED TO CONSULT McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P. TO ADDRESS THE FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THESE TRANSACTIONS.**

Earnings on Nonpurpose Investments

The arbitrage rebate provisions apply only to the receipts from the investment of "gross proceeds" in "nonpurpose investments." For this purpose, nonpurpose investments are stock, bonds or other obligations acquired with the gross proceeds of the bonds for the period prior to the expenditure of the gross proceeds for the ultimate purpose. For example, investments deposited to construction funds, reserve funds (including surplus taxes or revenues deposited to sinking funds) or other similar funds are nonpurpose investments. Such investments include only those which are acquired with "gross proceeds." For this purpose, the term "gross proceeds" includes original proceeds received from the sale of the bonds, investment earnings from the investment of such original proceeds, amounts pledged to the payment of debt service on the bonds or amounts actually used to pay debt service on the bonds. The regulations do not provide a sufficient amount of guidance to include an exhaustive list of "gross proceeds" for this purpose; however, it can be assumed that "gross proceeds" represent all amounts received from the sale of bonds, amounts earned as a result of such sale or amounts (including taxes and revenues) which are used to pay, or secure the payment of, debt service for the bonds. The total amount of "gross proceeds" allocated to a bond generally can not exceed the outstanding principal amount of the bonds.

The regulations provide that an investment is allocated to an issue for the period (1) that begins on the date gross proceeds are used to acquire the investment, and (2) that ends on the date such investment ceases to be allocated to the issue. In general, proceeds are allocated to a bond issue until expended for the ultimate purpose for which the bond was issued or for which such proceeds are received (e.g., construction of a bond-financed facility or payment of debt service on the bonds). Deposit of gross proceeds to the general fund of the

issuer (or other fund in which they are commingled with revenues or taxes) does not eliminate or ameliorate the issuer's obligation to compute rebate in most cases. As such, proceeds commingled with the general revenues of the issuer are not "freed-up" from the rebate obligation. An exception to this commingling limitation for bonds, other than private activity bonds, permits "investment earnings" (but not sale proceeds or other types of gross proceeds) to be considered spent when deposited to a commingled fund if those amounts are reasonably expected to be spent within six months. Other than for these amounts, issuers may consider segregating investments in order to more easily compute the amount of such arbitrage earnings by not having to allocate investments.

Special rules are provided for purposes of advance refundings. These rules are too complex to discuss in this memorandum. Essentially, the rules relating to refundings, however, do not require that amounts deposited to the escrow fund to defease the prior obligations of the issuer be subject to arbitrage rebate to the extent that the investments deposited to the escrow fund do not have a yield in excess of the yield on the bonds. Any loss resulting from the investment of proceeds in an escrow fund below the yield on the bonds, however, may be recovered by combining those investments with investments deposited to other funds, e.g., reserve or construction funds.

The arbitrage regulations also provide an exception to the arbitrage limitations for the investment of bond proceeds in tax-exempt obligations. As such, investment of proceeds in tax exempt bonds eliminates the issuer's rebate obligation. A caveat; this exception does not apply to gross proceeds derived allocable to a bond, which is not subject to the alternative minimum tax under section 57(a)(5) of the Code, if invested in tax-exempt bonds subject to the alternative minimum tax, i.e., "private activity bonds." Such "AMT-subject" investment is treated as a taxable investment and must comply with the arbitrage rules, including rebate. Earnings from these tax-exempt investments are subject to arbitrage restrictions, including rebate.

Similarly, the investment of gross proceeds in certain tax-exempt mutual funds are treated as a direct investment in the tax-exempt obligations deposited in such fund. While issuers may invest in such funds for purposes of avoiding arbitrage rebate, they should be aware that if "private activity bonds" are included in the fund then a portion of the earnings will be subject to arbitrage rebate. Issuers should be prudent in assuring that the funds do not contain private activity bonds.

The arbitrage regulations provide a number of instances in which earnings will be imputed to nonpurpose investments. Receipts generally will be imputed to investments that do not bear interest at an arm's-length (i.e., market) interest rate. As such, the regulations adopt a "market price" rule. In effect, this rule prohibits an issuer from investing bond proceeds in investments at a price which is higher than the market price of comparable obligations, in order to reduce the yield. Special rules are included for determining the market price for investment contracts, certificates of deposit and certain U.S. Treasury obligations. For example, to establish the fair market value of investment contracts a bidding process between three qualified bidders must be used. The fair market value of certificates of deposit which bear a fixed interest rate and are subject to an early withdrawal penalty is its purchase price if that price is not less than the yield on comparable U.S. Treasury obligations and is the highest yield available from the institution. In any event, a basic "common sense" rule-of-thumb that can be used to determine whether a fair market value has been paid is to ask whether the general

funds of the issuer would be invested at the same yield or at a higher yield. An exception to this market price rule is available for United States Treasury Obligations - State or Local Government Series in which case the purchase price is always the market price.

Reimbursement and Working Capital

The regulations provide rules for purposes of determining whether gross proceeds are used for working capital and, if so, at what times those proceeds are considered spent. In general, working capital financings are subject to many of the same rules that have existed since the mid-1970s. For example, the regulations generally continue the 13-month temporary period. By adopting a "proceeds-spent-last" rule, the regulations also generally require that an issuer actually incur a deficit (i.e., expenditures must exceed receipts) for the computation period (which generally corresponds to the issuer's fiscal year). Also, the regulations continue to permit an operating reserve, but unlike prior regulations the amount of such reserve may not exceed five percent of the issuer's actual working capital expenditures for the prior fiscal year. Another change made by the regulations is that the issuer may not finance the operating reserve with proceeds of a tax-exempt obligation.

Importantly, the regulations contain rules for determining whether proceeds used to reimburse an issuer for costs paid prior to the date of issue of the obligation, in fact, are considered spent at the time of reimbursement. These rules apply to an issuer who uses general revenues for the payment of all or a portion of the costs of a project then uses the proceeds of the bonds to reimburse those general revenues. Failure to comply with these rules would result in the proceeds continuing to be subject to federal income tax restrictions, including rebate.

To qualify for reimbursement, a cost must be described in an expression (e.g., resolution, legislative authorization) evidencing the issuer's intent to reimburse which is made no later than 60 days after the payment of the cost. Reimbursement must occur no later than 18 months after the later of (1) the date the cost is paid or (2) the date the project is placed in service. Except for projects requiring an extended construction period or small issuers, in no event can a cost be reimbursed more than three years after the cost is paid.

Reimbursement generally is not permitted for working capital; only capital costs, grants and loans may be reimbursed. Moreover, certain anti-abuse rules apply to prevent issuers from avoiding the limitations on refundings. IN CASES INVOLVING WORKING CAPITAL OR REIMBURSEMENT, ISSUERS ARE ADVISED TO CONTACT McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P. TO ADDRESS THE FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE TRANSACTION.

Rebate Payments

Rebate payments generally are due 60 days after each installment computation date. The interim computation dates occur each fifth anniversary of the issue date. The final computation date is on the latest of (1) the date 60 days after the date the issue of bonds is no longer outstanding, (2) the date eight months after the date of issue for certain short-term obligations (i.e., obligations retired within three years), or (3) the date the issuer no longer reasonably expects any spending exception, discussed below, to apply to the issue. On such

payment dates, other than the final payment date, an issuer is required to pay 90 percent of the rebatable arbitrage to the United States. On the final payment date, an issuer is required to pay 100 percent of the remaining rebate liability.

Failure to timely pay rebate does not necessarily result in the loss of tax-exemption. Late payments, however, are subject to the payment of interest, and unless waived, a penalty of 50 percent (or, in the case of private activity bonds, other than qualified 501(c)(3) bonds, 100 percent) of the rebate amount which is due. IN SUCH CIRCUMSTANCES, ISSUERS ARE ADVISED TO CONSULT McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P. TO ADDRESS THE FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THESE TRANSACTIONS.

Rebate payments are refundable. The issuer, however, must establish to the satisfaction of the Commissioner of the Internal Revenue Service that the issuer paid an amount in excess of the rebate and that the recovery of the overpayment on that date would not result in additional rebatable arbitrage. An overpayment of less than \$5,000 may not be recovered before the final computation date.

Alternative Penalty Amount

In certain cases, an issuer of a bond the proceeds of which are to be used for construction may elect to pay a penalty, in lieu of rebate. The penalty may be elected in circumstances in which the issuer expects to satisfy the two-year spending exception which is more fully described under the heading "Exceptions to Rebate." The penalty is payable, if at all, within 60 days after the end of each six-month period. This is more often than rebate. The election of the alternative penalty amount would subject an issuer, which fails the two-year spend-out requirements, to the payment of a penalty equal to one and one-half of the excess of the amount of proceeds which was required to be spent during that period over the amount which was actually spent during the period.

The penalty has characteristics which distinguish it from arbitrage rebate. First, the penalty would be payable without regard to whether any arbitrage profit is actually earned. Second, the penalty continues to accrue until either (1) the appropriate amount is expended or (2) the issuer elects to terminate the penalty. To be able to terminate the penalty, the issuer must meet specific requirements and, in some instances, must pay an additional penalty equal to three percent of the unexpended proceeds.

Exceptions to Rebate

The Code and regulations provide certain exceptions to the requirement that the excess investment earnings be rebated to the United States.

a. Small Issuers. The first exception provides that if an issuer (together with all subordinate issuers) during a calendar year does not issue tax-exempt bonds² in an aggregate

² For this purpose, "private activity bonds" neither are afforded the benefit of this exception nor are taken into account for purposes of determining the amount of bonds issued.

face amount exceeding \$5 million, then the obligations are not subject to rebate. *Only issuers with general taxing powers may take advantage of this exception.* Subordinate issuers are those issuers which derive their authority to issue bonds from the same issuer, e.g., a city and a health facilities development corporation, or which are controlled by the same issuer, e.g., a state and the board of a public university. In the case of bonds issued for public school capital expenditures, the \$5 million cap may be increased to as much as \$15 million. For purposes of measuring whether bonds in the calendar year exceed these dollar limits, current refunding bonds can be disregarded if they meet certain structural requirements. Please contact McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. for further information.

b. Spending Exceptions.

Six-Month Exception. The second exception to the rebate requirement is available to all tax-exempt bonds, all of the gross proceeds of which are expended during six months. The six month rule is available to bonds issued after the effective date of the Tax Reform Act of 1986. See the discussion of effective dates on page two. For this purpose, proceeds used for the redemption of bonds (other than proceeds of a refunding bond deposited to an escrow fund to discharge refunded bonds) can not be taken into account as expended. As such, bonds with excess gross proceeds generally can not satisfy the second exception unless the amount does not exceed the lesser of five percent or \$100,000 and such de minimis amount must be expended within one year.

Certain gross proceeds are not subject to the spend-out requirement, including amounts deposited to a bona fide debt service fund, to a reserve fund and amounts which become gross proceeds received from purpose investments. These amounts themselves, however, may be subject to rebate even though the originally expended proceeds were not. The Code provides a special rule for tax and revenue anticipation notes (i.e., obligations issued to pay operating expenses in anticipation of the receipt of taxes and other revenues). Such notes are referred to as TRANs. To determine the timely expenditure of the proceeds of a TRAN, the computation of the "cumulative cash flow deficit" is important. If the "cumulative cash flow deficit" (i.e., the point at which the operating expenditures of the issuer on a cumulative basis exceed the revenues of the issuer during the fiscal year) occurs within the first six months of the date of issue and must be equal to at least 90 percent of the proceeds of the TRAN, then the notes are deemed to satisfy the exception. This special rule requires, however, that the deficit actually occur, not that the issuer merely have an expectation that the deficit will occur. In lieu of the statutory exception for TRANs, the regulations also provide a second exception. Under this exception, 100 percent of the proceeds must be spent within six months, but before note proceeds can be considered spent, all other available amounts of the issuer must be spent first ("proceeds-spent-last" rule). In determining whether all available amounts are spent, a reasonable working capital reserve equal to five percent of the prior year's expenditures may be set aside and treated as unavailable.

18-Month Exception. The regulations also establish a non-statutory exception to arbitrage rebate if all of the gross proceeds (including investment earnings) are expended within 18 months after the date of issue. Under this exception, 15 percent of the gross proceeds must be expended within a six-month spending period, 60 percent within a 12-month spending period and 100 percent within an 18-month spending period. The rule permits an issuer to rely on its reasonable expectations for computing investment earnings which are included as gross

proceeds during the first and second spending period. A reasonable retainage not to exceed five percent of the sale proceeds of the issue is not required to be spent within the 18-month period but must be expended within 30 months. Rules similar to the six-month exception relate to the definition of gross proceeds.

Two Year Exception. Bonds issued after December 19, 1989 (i.e., the effective date of the Omnibus Reconciliation Act of 1989), at least 75 percent of the net proceeds of which are to be used for construction, may be exempted from rebate if the gross proceeds are spent within two years. Bonds more than 25 percent of the proceeds of which are used for acquisition or working capital may not take advantage of this exception. The exception applies only to governmental bonds, qualified 501(c)(3) bonds and private activity bonds for governmentally-owned airports and docks and wharves. The two-year exception requires that at least 10 percent of the available construction proceeds must be expended within six months after the date of issue, 45 percent within 12 months, 75 percent within 18 months and 100 percent within 24 months. The term "available construction proceeds" generally means sale proceeds of the bonds together with investment earnings less amounts deposited to a qualified reserve fund or used to pay costs of issuance. Under this rule, a reasonable retainage not to exceed five percent need not be spent within 24 months but must be spent within 36 months.

The two-year rule also provides for numerous elections which must be made not later than the date of issuance of the bonds. Once made, the elections are irrevocable. Certain elections permit an issuer to bifurcate bond issues, thereby treating only a portion of the issue as a qualified construction bond; and, permit an issuer to disregard earnings from reserve funds for purposes of determining "available construction proceeds." Another election permits an issuer to pay the alternative penalty amount discussed above in lieu of rebate if the issuer ultimately fails to satisfy the two-year rule. Issuers should discuss these elections with their financial advisors prior to issuance of the bonds. Of course, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. remains available to assist you by providing legal interpretations thereof.

Debt Service Funds. Additionally, an exception to the rebate requirement, whether or not any of the previously discussed exceptions are available, applies for earnings on "bona fide debt service funds." A "bona fide debt service fund" is one in which the amounts are expended within 13 months of the accumulation of such amounts by the issuer. In general, most interest and sinking funds (other than any excess taxes or revenues accumulated therein) satisfy these requirements. For private activity bonds, short term bonds (i.e., have a term of less than five years) or variable rate bonds, the exclusion is available only if the gross earnings in such fund does not exceed \$100,000, for the bond year. For other bonds issued after November 11, 1988, no limitation is applied to the gross earnings on such funds for purposes of this exception. Therefore, subject to the foregoing discussion, the issuer is not required to take such amounts into account for purposes of the computation.

FOR BONDS ISSUED AFTER THE EFFECTIVE DATE OF THE TAX REFORM ACT OF 1986 WHICH WERE OUTSTANDING AS OF NOVEMBER 11, 1988, OTHER THAN PRIVATE ACTIVITY BONDS, SHORT TERM BONDS OR VARIABLE RATE BONDS, A ONE-TIME ELECTION MAY BE MADE TO EXCLUDE EARNINGS ON "BONA FIDE DEBT SERVICE FUNDS" WITHOUT REGARD TO THE \$100,000, LIMITATION. THE ELECTION MUST BE MADE IN WRITING (AND MAINTAINED AS PART OF THE ISSUER'S BOOKS AND

RECORDS) NO LATER THAN THE LATER OF MARCH 21, 1990, OR THE FIRST DATE A REBATE PAYMENT IS REQUIRED.

Conclusion

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. hopes that this memorandum will prove to be useful as a general guide to the arbitrage rebate requirements.

Again, this memorandum is not intended as an exhaustive discussion nor as specific advice with respect to any specific transaction. We advise our clients to seek competent financial and accounting assistance. Of course, we remain available to provide legal advice regarding all federal income tax matters, including arbitrage rebate. If you have any questions, please feel free to contact either Harold T. Flanagan or Faust N. Bowerman at (214) 754-9200.

Exhibit "B"

LAW OFFICES

McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.

600 CONGRESS AVENUE
SUITE 1800
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78701-3248
TELEPHONE: (512) 478-3805
FACSIMILE: (512) 472-0871

717 NORTH HARWOOD
SUITE 900
DALLAS, TEXAS 75201-8587
TELEPHONE: (214) 754-9200
FACSIMILE: (214) 754-9250

700 N. ST. MARY'S STREET
SUITE 1525
SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS 78205-3503
TELEPHONE: (210) 225-2800
FACSIMILE: (210) 225-2984

August 29, 2011

Ms. Fiona Allen
Northern Region Manager
Trinity River Authority of Texas
5300 S. Collins
Arlington, Texas 76018

Re: Trinity River Authority of Texas
Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A

Dear Ms. Allen:

As you know, the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer") will issue the captioned bonds in order to provide for the acquisition and construction of the project. As a result of that issuance, the federal income tax laws impose certain restrictions on the investment and expenditure of amounts to be used for the project or to be deposited to the interest and sinking fund and the reserve fund for the captioned bonds. The purpose of this letter is to set forth, in somewhat less technical language, those provisions of the tax law which require the timely use of bond proceeds and that investment of these amounts be at a yield which is not higher than the yield on the captioned bonds. For this purpose, please refer to line 21(e) of the Form 8038-G included in the transcript of proceedings for the yield on the captioned bonds. Please note that the Form 8038-G has been prepared based on the information provided by or on your behalf by your financial advisor. Accordingly, while we believe that the information is correct you may wish to have the yield confirmed before your rebate consultant or the paying agent attempt to rely on it.

Generally, the federal tax laws provide that, unless excepted, amounts to be used for the project or to be deposited to the interest and sinking fund and the reserve fund must be invested in obligations the combined yield on which does not exceed the yield on the bonds. Importantly, for purposes of administrative convenience, the bonds, however, have been structured in such a way as to avoid, for the most part, this restriction on investment yield. They also contain certain covenants relating to expenditures of proceeds designed to alert you to unintentional failures to comply with the laws affecting expenditures of proceeds and dispositions of property.

First, the sale and investment proceeds to be used for the new money project may be invested for up to three years without regard to yield. (Such amounts, however, may be subject to rebate.) Thereafter, they must be invested at or below the bond yield. Importantly, expenditure of these proceeds must be accounted in your books and records. Allocations of these expenditures must occur within 18 months of the later of the date paid or the date the project is completed. The foregoing notwithstanding, the allocation should not occur later than 60 days

after the earlier of (1) of five years after the delivery date of the bonds or (2) the date the bonds are retired unless you obtain an opinion of bond counsel.

Second, the interest and sinking fund is made up of amounts which are received annually for the payment of current debt service on all the Issuer's outstanding bonds. Any taxes or revenues deposited to the interest and sinking fund which are to be used for the payment of current debt service on the captioned bonds, or any other outstanding bonds, are not subject to yield restriction. By definition, current debt service refers only to debt service to be paid within one year of the date of receipt of these amounts. For the most part, this would be debt service in the current fiscal year. These amounts deposited to the account for current debt service may be invested without regard to any constraint imposed by the federal income tax laws.

Third, a portion of the interest and sinking fund is permitted to be invested without regard to yield restriction as a "minor portion." The "minor portion" exception is available for de minimis amounts of taxes or revenues deposited to the interest and sinking fund. The maximum amount that may be invested as part of this account may not exceed the lesser of five percent of the principal amount of the bonds or \$100,000.

In addition, the reserve fund contains an amount, which although not expended for debt service within the current year, is necessary to ensure that amounts will be sufficient to pay debt service in the event that taxes or revenues are insufficient during that period. This amount represents a reserve against periodic fluctuations in the receipt of taxes and revenues. The Internal Revenue Code permits amounts which are held in reserve for the payment of debt service, in such instances, to be invested without regard to yield restriction if such amounts do not exceed the lesser of (1) 10 percent of the outstanding principal amount of all outstanding bonds, (2) maximum annual debt service on all outstanding bonds, or (3) 125 percent of average annual debt service on all outstanding bonds.

Accordingly, you should review the current balance in the interest and sinking fund and the reserve fund in order to determine if such balances exceed the aggregate amounts discussed above. Additionally, in the future it is important that you be aware of these restrictions as additional amounts are deposited to the funds. The amounts in these funds which are subject to yield restriction would only be the amounts which are in excess of, in the case of the interest and sinking fund, the sum of (1) the current debt service account and (2) the "minor portion" account and, in the case of the reserve fund, the amount which is the lesser of the three amounts described above. Moreover, to the extent that additional bonds are issued by the Issuer, whether for new money projects or for refunding, these amounts will change in their proportion.

The Resolution contains covenants that require the Issuer to comply with the requirements of the federal tax laws relating to the tax-exempt obligations. The Internal Revenue Service (the "Service") has determined that certain materials, records and information should be retained by the issuers of tax-exempt obligations for the purpose of enabling the Service to confirm the exclusion of the interest on such obligations under the Internal Revenue Code. **Accordingly, the Issuer should retain such materials, records and information for the period beginning on the issue date of the captioned bonds and ending three years after the date the captioned bonds are retired. Please note this federal tax law standard may vary from state law standards.**

The material, records and information required to be retained will generally be contained in the transcript of proceedings for the captioned bonds, however, the Issuer should collect and retain additional materials, records and information to ensure the continued compliance with federal tax law requirements. For example, beyond the transcript of proceedings for the bonds, the Issuer should keep schedules evidencing the expenditure of bond proceeds, documents relating to the use of bond-financed property by governmental and any private parties (e.g., leases and management contracts, if any) and schedules pertaining to the investment of bond proceeds. In the event that you have questions relating to record retention, please contact us.

The Service also wants some assurance that any failure to comply with the federal tax laws was not due to an issuer's intentional disregard or gross neglect of the responsibilities imposed on it by the federal tax laws. Therefore, to ensure post-issuance compliance, an issuer should consider adopting formalized written guidelines to help the issuer perform diligence reviews at regular intervals. The goal is for issuers to be able to timely identify and resolve violations of the laws necessary to maintain their obligations' tax-favored status. While the federal tax certificate, together with its attachments, may generally provide a basic written guideline when incorporated in an organizations' operations, the extent to which an organization has appropriate written compliance procedures in place is to be determined on a case-by-case basis. Moreover, the Service has indicated that written procedures should identify the personnel that adopted the procedures, the personnel that is responsible for monitoring compliance, the frequency of compliance check activities, the nature of the compliance check activities undertaken, and the date such procedures were originally adopted and subsequently updated, if applicable. The Service has stated that the adoption of such procedures will be a favorable factor that the Service will consider when determining the amount of any penalty to be imposed on an issuer in the event of an unanticipated and non-curable failure to comply with the tax laws.

Finally, you should notice that the Resolution contains a covenant that limits the ability of the Issuer to sell or otherwise dispose of bond-financed property for compensation. Beginning for obligations issued after May 15, 1997 (including certain refunding bonds), or in cases in which an issuer elects to apply new private activity bond regulations, such sale or disposition causes the creation of a class of proceeds referred to as "disposition proceeds." Disposition proceeds, like sale proceeds and investment earnings, are tax-restricted funds. Failure to appropriately account, invest or expend such disposition proceeds would adversely affect the tax-exempt status of the bonds. In the event that you anticipate selling property, even in the ordinary course, please contact us.

Obviously, this letter only presents a fundamental discussion of the yield restriction rules as applied to amounts deposited to the funds. Moreover, this letter does not address the rebate consequences with respect to the interest and sinking fund and the reserve fund. You should review the memorandum attached to the Federal Tax Certificate as Exhibit "A" for this purpose. If you have certain concerns with respect to the matters discussed in this letter or wish to ask additional questions with regards to certain limitations imposed, please feel free to contact our firm. Thank you for your consideration and we look forward to our continued relationship.

Very truly yours,

McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.

cc: G. Charles Kobdich

Exhibit "C"

SCHEDULES OF FINANCIAL ADVISOR

[To be attached hereto]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
Scale as of 8/18/2011
FINAL NUMBERS

Report	Page
TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A	
Sources and Uses of Funds	1
Aggregate Debt Service	2
Universal Formula Verification	3
Bond Summary Statistics	4
Bond Pricing	5
Net Debt Service	6
Bond Summary Statistics	9
Bond Pricing	10
Net Debt Service	11

SOURCES AND USES OF FUNDS

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

	Dated Date	10/06/2011		
	Delivery Date	10/06/2011		
		DCRWS - 2009	DCRWS - 2010	
		IUP	IUP \$14MM	
Sources:		\$23,765,000	Tranche 1	Total
Bond Proceeds:				
Par Amount		23,765,000.00	14,000,000.00	37,765,000.00
		23,765,000.00	14,000,000.00	37,765,000.00
		DCRWS - 2009	DCRWS - 2010	
		IUP	IUP \$14MM	
Uses:		\$23,765,000	Tranche 1	Total
Project Fund Deposits:				
Project Fund		20,259,042.28	12,054,781.52	32,313,823.80
Other Fund Deposits:				
Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)		1,382,075.76		1,382,075.76
Debt Service Reserve Fund		1,342,961.48	791,140.78	2,134,102.26
Capitalized Interest Fund (through 8/1/2013)			694,036.18	694,036.18
		2,725,037.24	1,485,176.96	4,210,214.20
Delivery Date Expenses:				
Cost of Issuance		349,253.94	205,746.06	555,000.00
TWDB Fee 1.85%		431,666.54	254,295.46	685,962.00
		780,920.48	460,041.52	1,240,962.00
		23,765,000.00	14,000,000.00	37,765,000.00

AGGREGATE DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System

TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A

Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps

Scale as of 8/18/2011

FINAL NUMBERS

Period Ending	DCRWS - 2009 IUP \$23,765,000	DCRWS - 2010 IUP \$14MM Tranche 1	Outstanding Parity Debt	Aggregate Debt Service
11/30/2012	488,278.26	312,581.18	4,798,844.38	5,599,703.82
11/30/2013	595,865.00	381,455.00	6,313,164.50	7,290,484.50
11/30/2014	595,865.00	671,455.00	7,068,952.00	8,336,272.00
11/30/2015	600,857.50	681,005.00	7,579,020.75	8,860,883.25
11/30/2016	1,468,443.75	699,675.00	7,564,667.00	9,732,785.75
11/30/2017	1,487,212.50	712,371.25	7,561,884.50	9,761,468.25
11/30/2018	1,507,807.50	723,847.50	7,555,617.00	9,787,272.00
11/30/2019	1,525,267.50	739,065.00	7,549,478.25	9,813,810.75
11/30/2020	1,544,850.00	753,067.50	7,548,688.25	9,846,605.75
11/30/2021	1,566,301.25	765,755.00	7,537,999.50	9,870,055.75
11/30/2022	1,589,870.00	777,242.50	7,531,222.00	9,898,334.50
11/30/2023	1,610,592.50	787,552.50	7,523,209.50	9,921,354.50
11/30/2024	1,633,261.25	801,558.75	7,514,642.00	9,949,462.00
11/30/2025	1,662,812.50	814,240.00	7,509,237.00	9,986,289.50
11/30/2026	1,684,342.50	825,652.50	7,507,102.00	10,017,097.00
11/30/2027	1,712,957.50	835,865.00	7,494,362.00	10,043,184.50
11/30/2028	1,742,968.75	849,610.00	3,645,577.00	6,238,155.75
11/30/2029	2,468,323.75	861,752.50	3,500,412.00	6,830,488.25
11/30/2030	2,488,551.25	872,370.00	3,354,629.50	6,715,550.75
11/30/2031	2,509,165.00	886,490.00	3,213,097.00	6,608,752.00
11/30/2032	2,530,462.50	899,152.50	3,065,760.75	6,495,375.75
11/30/2033		910,136.25	1,992,969.50	2,903,105.75
11/30/2034		924,312.50	1,742,864.50	2,667,177.00
11/30/2035		936,530.00	1,596,847.00	2,533,377.00
11/30/2036		946,738.75	1,159,837.00	2,106,575.75
11/30/2037		960,232.50	264,892.00	1,225,124.50
11/30/2038		977,040.00	219,708.50	1,196,748.50
	33,014,055.76	21,306,753.68	139,914,685.38	194,235,494.82

UNIVERSAL FORMULA VERIFICATION

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System

TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A

Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps

Scale as of 8/18/2011

****FINAL NUMBERS****

Component	Formula	Value
ISS	555,000	555,000.00
DSRF	Total aggregate Debt Service / 26.50	7,329,641.31
DSRF	- 5,195,539.05	-5,195,539.05
DSRF	Debt Service Reserve Fund	2,134,102.26
EXP	685,962	685,962.00
EXP	TWDB Fee 1.85%	685,962.00

BOND SUMMARY STATISTICS

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Dated Date	10/06/2011
Delivery Date	10/06/2011
First Coupon	02/01/2012
Last Maturity	02/01/2038

Arbitrage Yield	2.863892%
True Interest Cost (TIC)	2.863892%
Net Interest Cost (NIC)	2.905987%
All-In TIC	3.143396%
Average Coupon	2.905987%

Average Life (years)	15.086
Duration of Issue (years)	12.191

Par Amount	37,765,000.00
Bond Proceeds	37,765,000.00
Total Interest	16,555,809.44
Net Interest	16,555,809.44
Bond Years from Dated Date	569,713,819.44
Bond Years from Delivery Date	569,713,819.44
Total Debt Service	54,320,809.44
Maximum Annual Debt Service	3,429,615.00
Average Annual Debt Service	2,063,904.11

Underwriter's Fees (per \$1000)
Average Takedown
Other Fee

Total Underwriter's Discount

Bid Price	100.000000
-----------	------------

	TIC	All-In TIC	Arbitrage Yield
Par Value	37,765,000.00	37,765,000.00	37,765,000.00
+ Accrued Interest			
+ Premium (Discount)			
- Underwriter's Discount			
- Cost of Issuance Expense		-555,000.00	
- Other Amounts		-685,962.00	
Target Value	37,765,000.00	36,524,038.00	37,765,000.00
Target Date	10/06/2011	10/06/2011	10/06/2011
Yield	2.863892%	3.143396%	2.863892%

BOND PRICING

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Bond Component	Maturity Date	Amount	Rate	Yield	Price
Serial Bond:					
	02/01/2014	290,000			100.000
	02/01/2015	305,000	0.300%	0.300%	100.000
	02/01/2016	1,195,000	0.550%	0.550%	100.000
	02/01/2017	1,235,000	0.850%	0.850%	100.000
	02/01/2018	1,280,000	1.200%	1.200%	100.000
	02/01/2019	1,330,000	1.450%	1.450%	100.000
	02/01/2020	1,385,000	1.700%	1.700%	100.000
	02/01/2021	1,445,000	1.950%	1.950%	100.000
	02/01/2022	1,510,000	2.100%	2.100%	100.000
	02/01/2023	1,575,000	2.300%	2.300%	100.000
	02/01/2024	1,650,000	2.450%	2.450%	100.000
	02/01/2025	1,735,000	2.600%	2.600%	100.000
	02/01/2026	1,815,000	2.700%	2.700%	100.000
	02/01/2027	1,905,000	2.800%	2.800%	100.000
	02/01/2028	2,005,000	2.950%	2.950%	100.000
	02/01/2029	2,815,000	3.050%	3.050%	100.000
	02/01/2030	2,935,000	3.150%	3.150%	100.000
	02/01/2031	3,065,000	3.200%	3.200%	100.000
	02/01/2032	3,200,000	3.250%	3.250%	100.000
	02/01/2033	745,000	3.350%	3.350%	100.000
	02/01/2034	785,000	3.400%	3.400%	100.000
	02/01/2035	825,000	3.500%	3.500%	100.000
	02/01/2036	865,000	3.550%	3.550%	100.000
	02/01/2037	910,000	3.550%	3.550%	100.000
	02/01/2038	960,000	3.550%	3.550%	100.000
		37,765,000			

Dated Date	10/06/2011	
Delivery Date	10/06/2011	
First Coupon	02/01/2012	
Par Amount	37,765,000.00	
Original Issue Discount		
Production	37,765,000.00	100.000000%
Underwriter's Discount		
Purchase Price	37,765,000.00	100.000000%
Accrued Interest		
Net Proceeds	37,765,000.00	

NET DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Period Ending	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service	Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)	Debt Service Reserve Fund	Net Debt Service
11/30/2012		800,859.44	800,859.44	800,859.44		
11/30/2013		977,320.00	977,320.00	977,320.00		
11/30/2014	290,000	977,320.00	1,267,320.00	297,932.50		969,387.50
11/30/2015	305,000	976,862.50	1,281,862.50			1,281,862.50
11/30/2016	1,195,000	973,118.75	2,168,118.75			2,168,118.75
11/30/2017	1,235,000	964,583.75	2,199,583.75			2,199,583.75
11/30/2018	1,280,000	951,655.00	2,231,655.00			2,231,655.00
11/30/2019	1,330,000	934,332.50	2,264,332.50			2,264,332.50
11/30/2020	1,385,000	912,917.50	2,297,917.50			2,297,917.50
11/30/2021	1,445,000	887,056.25	2,332,056.25			2,332,056.25
11/30/2022	1,510,000	857,112.50	2,367,112.50			2,367,112.50
11/30/2023	1,575,000	823,145.00	2,398,145.00			2,398,145.00
11/30/2024	1,650,000	784,820.00	2,434,820.00			2,434,820.00
11/30/2025	1,735,000	742,052.50	2,477,052.50			2,477,052.50
11/30/2026	1,815,000	694,995.00	2,509,995.00			2,509,995.00
11/30/2027	1,905,000	643,822.50	2,548,822.50			2,548,822.50
11/30/2028	2,005,000	587,578.75	2,592,578.75			2,592,578.75
11/30/2029	2,815,000	515,076.25	3,330,076.25			3,330,076.25
11/30/2030	2,935,000	425,921.25	3,360,921.25			3,360,921.25
11/30/2031	3,065,000	330,655.00	3,395,655.00			3,395,655.00
11/30/2032	3,200,000	229,615.00	3,429,615.00		1,342,961.48	2,086,653.52
11/30/2033	745,000	165,136.25	910,136.25			910,136.25
11/30/2034	785,000	139,312.50	924,312.50			924,312.50
11/30/2035	825,000	111,530.00	936,530.00			936,530.00
11/30/2036	865,000	81,738.75	946,738.75			946,738.75
11/30/2037	910,000	50,232.50	960,232.50			960,232.50
11/30/2038	960,000	17,040.00	977,040.00		791,140.78	185,899.22
	37,765,000	16,555,809.44	54,320,809.44	2,076,111.94	2,134,102.26	50,110,595.24

NET DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Date	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service	Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)	Debt Service Reserve Fund	Net Debt Service
02/01/2012		312,199.44	312,199.44	312,199.44		
08/01/2012		488,660.00	488,660.00	488,660.00		
02/01/2013		488,660.00	488,660.00	488,660.00		
08/01/2013		488,660.00	488,660.00	488,660.00		
02/01/2014	290,000	488,660.00	778,660.00	297,932.50		480,727.50
08/01/2014		488,660.00	488,660.00			488,660.00
02/01/2015	305,000	488,660.00	793,660.00			793,660.00
08/01/2015		488,202.50	488,202.50			488,202.50
02/01/2016	1,195,000	488,202.50	1,683,202.50			1,683,202.50
08/01/2016		484,916.25	484,916.25			484,916.25
02/01/2017	1,235,000	484,916.25	1,719,916.25			1,719,916.25
08/01/2017		479,667.50	479,667.50			479,667.50
02/01/2018	1,280,000	479,667.50	1,759,667.50			1,759,667.50
08/01/2018		471,987.50	471,987.50			471,987.50
02/01/2019	1,330,000	471,987.50	1,801,987.50			1,801,987.50
08/01/2019		462,345.00	462,345.00			462,345.00
02/01/2020	1,385,000	462,345.00	1,847,345.00			1,847,345.00
08/01/2020		450,572.50	450,572.50			450,572.50
02/01/2021	1,445,000	450,572.50	1,895,572.50			1,895,572.50
08/01/2021		436,483.75	436,483.75			436,483.75
02/01/2022	1,510,000	436,483.75	1,946,483.75			1,946,483.75
08/01/2022		420,628.75	420,628.75			420,628.75
02/01/2023	1,575,000	420,628.75	1,995,628.75			1,995,628.75
08/01/2023		402,516.25	402,516.25			402,516.25
02/01/2024	1,650,000	402,516.25	2,052,516.25			2,052,516.25
08/01/2024		382,303.75	382,303.75			382,303.75
02/01/2025	1,735,000	382,303.75	2,117,303.75			2,117,303.75
08/01/2025		359,748.75	359,748.75			359,748.75
02/01/2026	1,815,000	359,748.75	2,174,748.75			2,174,748.75
08/01/2026		335,246.25	335,246.25			335,246.25
02/01/2027	1,905,000	335,246.25	2,240,246.25			2,240,246.25
08/01/2027		308,576.25	308,576.25			308,576.25
02/01/2028	2,005,000	308,576.25	2,313,576.25			2,313,576.25
08/01/2028		279,002.50	279,002.50			279,002.50
02/01/2029	2,815,000	279,002.50	3,094,002.50			3,094,002.50
08/01/2029		236,073.75	236,073.75			236,073.75
02/01/2030	2,935,000	236,073.75	3,171,073.75			3,171,073.75
08/01/2030		189,847.50	189,847.50			189,847.50
02/01/2031	3,065,000	189,847.50	3,254,847.50			3,254,847.50
08/01/2031		140,807.50	140,807.50			140,807.50
02/01/2032	3,200,000	140,807.50	3,340,807.50		1,342,961.48	1,997,846.02
08/01/2032		88,807.50	88,807.50			88,807.50
02/01/2033	745,000	88,807.50	833,807.50			833,807.50
08/01/2033		76,328.75	76,328.75			76,328.75
02/01/2034	785,000	76,328.75	861,328.75			861,328.75
08/01/2034		62,983.75	62,983.75			62,983.75
02/01/2035	825,000	62,983.75	887,983.75			887,983.75
08/01/2035		48,546.25	48,546.25			48,546.25

NET DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System

TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A

Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps

Scale as of 8/18/2011

FINAL NUMBERS

Date	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service	Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)	Debt Service Reserve Fund	Net Debt Service
02/01/2036	865,000	48,546.25	913,546.25			913,546.25
08/01/2036		33,192.50	33,192.50			33,192.50
02/01/2037	910,000	33,192.50	943,192.50			943,192.50
08/01/2037		17,040.00	17,040.00			17,040.00
02/01/2038	960,000	17,040.00	977,040.00		791,140.78	185,899.22
	37,765,000	16,555,809.44	54,320,809.44	2,076,111.94	2,134,102.26	50,110,595.24

BOND SUMMARY STATISTICS

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Dated Date	10/06/2011
Delivery Date	10/06/2011
First Coupon	02/01/2012
Last Maturity	02/01/2038

Arbitrage Yield	2.863892%
True Interest Cost (TIC)	2.863892%
Net Interest Cost (NIC)	2.905987%
All-In TIC	3.143396%
Average Coupon	2.905987%

Average Life (years)	15.086
Duration of Issue (years)	12.191

Par Amount	37,765,000.00
Bond Proceeds	37,765,000.00
Total Interest	16,555,809.44
Net Interest	16,555,809.44
Bond Years from Dated Date	569,713,819.44
Bond Years from Delivery Date	569,713,819.44
Total Debt Service	54,320,809.44
Maximum Annual Debt Service	3,429,615.00
Average Annual Debt Service	2,063,904.11

Underwriter's Fees (per \$1000)
Average Takedown
Other Fee

Total Underwriter's Discount

Bid Price	100.000000
-----------	------------

	TIC	All-In TIC	Arbitrage Yield
Par Value	37,765,000.00	37,765,000.00	37,765,000.00
+ Accrued Interest			
+ Premium (Discount)			
- Underwriter's Discount			
- Cost of Issuance Expense		-555,000.00	
- Other Amounts		-685,962.00	
Target Value	37,765,000.00	36,524,038.00	37,765,000.00
Target Date	10/06/2011	10/06/2011	10/06/2011
Yield	2.863892%	3.143396%	2.863892%

BOND PRICING

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Bond Component	Maturity Date	Amount	Rate	Yield	Price
Serial Bond:					
	02/01/2014	290,000			100.000
	02/01/2015	305,000	0.300%	0.300%	100.000
	02/01/2016	1,195,000	0.550%	0.550%	100.000
	02/01/2017	1,235,000	0.850%	0.850%	100.000
	02/01/2018	1,280,000	1.200%	1.200%	100.000
	02/01/2019	1,330,000	1.450%	1.450%	100.000
	02/01/2020	1,385,000	1.700%	1.700%	100.000
	02/01/2021	1,445,000	1.950%	1.950%	100.000
	02/01/2022	1,510,000	2.100%	2.100%	100.000
	02/01/2023	1,575,000	2.300%	2.300%	100.000
	02/01/2024	1,650,000	2.450%	2.450%	100.000
	02/01/2025	1,735,000	2.600%	2.600%	100.000
	02/01/2026	1,815,000	2.700%	2.700%	100.000
	02/01/2027	1,905,000	2.800%	2.800%	100.000
	02/01/2028	2,005,000	2.950%	2.950%	100.000
	02/01/2029	2,815,000	3.050%	3.050%	100.000
	02/01/2030	2,935,000	3.150%	3.150%	100.000
	02/01/2031	3,065,000	3.200%	3.200%	100.000
	02/01/2032	3,200,000	3.250%	3.250%	100.000
	02/01/2033	745,000	3.350%	3.350%	100.000
	02/01/2034	785,000	3.400%	3.400%	100.000
	02/01/2035	825,000	3.500%	3.500%	100.000
	02/01/2036	865,000	3.550%	3.550%	100.000
	02/01/2037	910,000	3.550%	3.550%	100.000
	02/01/2038	960,000	3.550%	3.550%	100.000
		37,765,000			

Dated Date	10/06/2011	
Delivery Date	10/06/2011	
First Coupon	02/01/2012	
Par Amount	37,765,000.00	
Original Issue Discount		
Production	37,765,000.00	100.000000%
Underwriter's Discount		
Purchase Price	37,765,000.00	100.000000%
Accrued Interest		
Net Proceeds	37,765,000.00	

NET DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Period Ending	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service	Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)	Debt Service Reserve Fund	Net Debt Service
11/30/2012		800,859.44	800,859.44	800,859.44		
11/30/2013		977,320.00	977,320.00	977,320.00		
11/30/2014	290,000	977,320.00	1,267,320.00	297,932.50		969,387.50
11/30/2015	305,000	976,862.50	1,281,862.50			1,281,862.50
11/30/2016	1,195,000	973,118.75	2,168,118.75			2,168,118.75
11/30/2017	1,235,000	964,583.75	2,199,583.75			2,199,583.75
11/30/2018	1,280,000	951,655.00	2,231,655.00			2,231,655.00
11/30/2019	1,330,000	934,332.50	2,264,332.50			2,264,332.50
11/30/2020	1,385,000	912,917.50	2,297,917.50			2,297,917.50
11/30/2021	1,445,000	887,056.25	2,332,056.25			2,332,056.25
11/30/2022	1,510,000	857,112.50	2,367,112.50			2,367,112.50
11/30/2023	1,575,000	823,145.00	2,398,145.00			2,398,145.00
11/30/2024	1,650,000	784,820.00	2,434,820.00			2,434,820.00
11/30/2025	1,735,000	742,052.50	2,477,052.50			2,477,052.50
11/30/2026	1,815,000	694,995.00	2,509,995.00			2,509,995.00
11/30/2027	1,905,000	643,822.50	2,548,822.50			2,548,822.50
11/30/2028	2,005,000	587,578.75	2,592,578.75			2,592,578.75
11/30/2029	2,815,000	515,076.25	3,330,076.25			3,330,076.25
11/30/2030	2,935,000	425,921.25	3,360,921.25			3,360,921.25
11/30/2031	3,065,000	330,655.00	3,395,655.00			3,395,655.00
11/30/2032	3,200,000	229,615.00	3,429,615.00		1,342,961.48	2,086,653.52
11/30/2033	745,000	165,136.25	910,136.25			910,136.25
11/30/2034	785,000	139,312.50	924,312.50			924,312.50
11/30/2035	825,000	111,530.00	936,530.00			936,530.00
11/30/2036	865,000	81,738.75	946,738.75			946,738.75
11/30/2037	910,000	50,232.50	960,232.50			960,232.50
11/30/2038	960,000	17,040.00	977,040.00		791,140.78	185,899.22
	37,765,000	16,555,809.44	54,320,809.44	2,076,111.94	2,134,102.26	50,110,595.24

NET DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
 TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
 Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
 Scale as of 8/18/2011
 FINAL NUMBERS

Date	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service	Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)	Debt Service Reserve Fund	Net Debt Service
02/01/2012		312,199.44	312,199.44	312,199.44		
08/01/2012		488,660.00	488,660.00	488,660.00		
02/01/2013		488,660.00	488,660.00	488,660.00		
08/01/2013		488,660.00	488,660.00	488,660.00		
02/01/2014	290,000	488,660.00	778,660.00	297,932.50		480,727.50
08/01/2014		488,660.00	488,660.00			488,660.00
02/01/2015	305,000	488,660.00	793,660.00			793,660.00
08/01/2015		488,202.50	488,202.50			488,202.50
02/01/2016	1,195,000	488,202.50	1,683,202.50			1,683,202.50
08/01/2016		484,916.25	484,916.25			484,916.25
02/01/2017	1,235,000	484,916.25	1,719,916.25			1,719,916.25
08/01/2017		479,667.50	479,667.50			479,667.50
02/01/2018	1,280,000	479,667.50	1,759,667.50			1,759,667.50
08/01/2018		471,987.50	471,987.50			471,987.50
02/01/2019	1,330,000	471,987.50	1,801,987.50			1,801,987.50
08/01/2019		462,345.00	462,345.00			462,345.00
02/01/2020	1,385,000	462,345.00	1,847,345.00			1,847,345.00
08/01/2020		450,572.50	450,572.50			450,572.50
02/01/2021	1,445,000	450,572.50	1,895,572.50			1,895,572.50
08/01/2021		436,483.75	436,483.75			436,483.75
02/01/2022	1,510,000	436,483.75	1,946,483.75			1,946,483.75
08/01/2022		420,628.75	420,628.75			420,628.75
02/01/2023	1,575,000	420,628.75	1,995,628.75			1,995,628.75
08/01/2023		402,516.25	402,516.25			402,516.25
02/01/2024	1,650,000	402,516.25	2,052,516.25			2,052,516.25
08/01/2024		382,303.75	382,303.75			382,303.75
02/01/2025	1,735,000	382,303.75	2,117,303.75			2,117,303.75
08/01/2025		359,748.75	359,748.75			359,748.75
02/01/2026	1,815,000	359,748.75	2,174,748.75			2,174,748.75
08/01/2026		335,246.25	335,246.25			335,246.25
02/01/2027	1,905,000	335,246.25	2,240,246.25			2,240,246.25
08/01/2027		308,576.25	308,576.25			308,576.25
02/01/2028	2,005,000	308,576.25	2,313,576.25			2,313,576.25
08/01/2028		279,002.50	279,002.50			279,002.50
02/01/2029	2,815,000	279,002.50	3,094,002.50			3,094,002.50
08/01/2029		236,073.75	236,073.75			236,073.75
02/01/2030	2,935,000	236,073.75	3,171,073.75			3,171,073.75
08/01/2030		189,847.50	189,847.50			189,847.50
02/01/2031	3,065,000	189,847.50	3,254,847.50			3,254,847.50
08/01/2031		140,807.50	140,807.50			140,807.50
02/01/2032	3,200,000	140,807.50	3,340,807.50		1,342,961.48	1,997,846.02
08/01/2032		88,807.50	88,807.50			88,807.50
02/01/2033	745,000	88,807.50	833,807.50			833,807.50
08/01/2033		76,328.75	76,328.75			76,328.75
02/01/2034	785,000	76,328.75	861,328.75			861,328.75
08/01/2034		62,983.75	62,983.75			62,983.75
02/01/2035	825,000	62,983.75	887,983.75			887,983.75
08/01/2035		48,546.25	48,546.25			48,546.25

NET DEBT SERVICE

TRA- Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System
TWDB SRF Loan - Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A
Delphis Scale 96Aa less 95 bps
Scale as of 8/18/2011
FINAL NUMBERS

Date	Principal	Interest	Total Debt Service	Capitalized Interest Fund (through 2/1/2014)	Debt Service Reserve Fund	Net Debt Service
02/01/2036	865,000	48,546.25	913,546.25			913,546.25
08/01/2036		33,192.50	33,192.50			33,192.50
02/01/2037	910,000	33,192.50	943,192.50			943,192.50
08/01/2037		17,040.00	17,040.00			17,040.00
02/01/2038	960,000	17,040.00	977,040.00		791,140.78	185,899.22
	37,765,000	16,555,809.44	54,320,809.44	2,076,111.94	2,134,102.26	50,110,595.24


Exhibit "D"

CERTIFICATE OF ELECTION PURSUANT TO SECTION 148(f)(4)(C)
OF THE INTERNAL REVENUE CODE OF 1986

I, the undersigned, being the duly authorized representative of the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer") hereby state that the Issuer elects the provisions of section 148(f)(4)(C) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"), relating to the exception to arbitrage rebate for temporary investments, as more specifically designated below, with respect to the Issuer's Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Bonds") which are being issued on the date of delivery of the Bonds. The CUSIP Number for the Bonds is stated on the Form 8038-G filed in connection with the Bonds. The Issuer intends to take action to comply with the two-year temporary investments exception to rebate afforded construction certificates under section 148(f)(4)(C) of the Code. Capitalized terms have the same meaning as defined in the Federal Tax Certificate.

- ☐ 1. PENALTY ELECTION. In the event that the Issuer should fail to expend the "available construction proceeds" of the Bonds in accordance with the provisions of section 148(f)(4)(C) of the Code, the Issuer elects, in lieu of rebate, the penalty provisions of section 148(f)(4)(C)(vii)(I) of the Code.
- ☐ 2. RESERVE FUND ELECTION. The Issuer elects to exclude from "available construction proceeds," within the meaning of section 148(f)(4)(C)(vi) of the Code, of the Bonds, earnings on the Reserve Fund in accordance with section 148(f)(4)(C)(vi)(IV) of the Code.
- ☐ 3. MULTIPURPOSE ELECTION. The Issuer elects to treat that portion of the Bonds the proceeds of which are to be used for the payment of expenditures for construction, reconstruction or rehabilitation of the Projects, as defined in the instrument authorizing the issuance of the Bonds, in an amount which is currently expected to be equal to \$ _____ as a separate issue in accordance with the provisions of section 148(f)(4)(C)(v)(II) of the Code. *(Note: This election is not necessary unless less than 75 percent of the proceeds of the Bonds will be used for construction, reconstruction or renovation.)*
- ☐ 4. ACTUAL FACTS. For purposes of determining compliance with section 148(f)(c) of the Code (other than qualification of the Bonds as a qualified construction issue), the Issuer elects to use actual facts rather than reasonable expectations.
- ☐ 5. NO ELECTION. The Issuer understands that the elections which are adopted as evidenced by the check in the box adjacent to the applicable provision are ***irrevocable***. Further, the Issuer understands that qualification of the Bonds for eligibility for the exclusion from the rebate requirement set forth in section 148(f) of the Code is based on subsequent events and is unaffected by the Issuer's expectations of such events as of the date of delivery of the Bonds. ***Accordingly, while failure to execute this certificate and to designate the intended election does not preclude qualification, it would preclude the Issuer from the relief afforded by such election.***

DATED: October 6, 2011.


J. Kevin Ward
General Manager
Trinity River Authority of Texas
5300 S. Collins
Arlington, Texas 76018
Employer I.D. Number: 75-6005084

TAB 11

CLOSING CERTIFICATE

THE STATE OF TEXAS :
TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS :

I, the undersigned General Manager of said Authority, hereby certify as follows:

1. That this certificate is executed for and on behalf of said Authority with reference to the issuance and delivery of the TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2011A, DATED SEPTEMBER 15, 2011, authorized by a resolution adopted by the Board of Directors of the Issuer on August 24, 2011 (the "Bonds").

2. That, to my best knowledge and belief:

(a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Authority contained in its Application to the Texas Water Development Board and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Application, on the date of sale of said Bonds, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects;

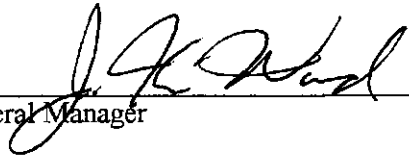
(b) insofar as the Authority and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Application did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;

(c) insofar as the descriptions and statements, including financial data, of or pertaining to entities other than the Authority and their activities contained in such Application are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Authority believes to be reliable and that the Authority has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect.

[The balance of this page is intentionally left blank.]

SIGNED this OCT 06 2011.

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS


General Manager

TAB 12

Trinity River Authority, Texas

Primary Credit AnalystTheodore Chapman
Dallas

(1) 214-871-1401

theodore_chapman@
standardandpoors.comSecondary Contact: Scott Sagen
Dallas

(214)765-5867

scott_sagen@

standardandpoors.com

Credit Profile

US\$37.765 mil Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, (TWDB SRF) Series 2011A, dated 10/6/2011, due 11/30/2038

Long Term Rating

AA/Stable

New

US\$9.515 mil Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater System Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 2011, dated 11/03/2011, due 11/30/2021

Long Term Rating

AA/Stable

New

Rationale

Standard & Poor's Ratings Services assigned its 'AA' long-term rating and stable outlook to Trinity River Authority, Texas' (TRA or the authority) series 2011A state revolving fund (SRF) loan, issued for Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System. We also assigned our 'AA' rating to the authority's series 2011 revenue refunding bonds. In addition, we affirmed the 'AA' underlying rating (SPUR) and 'AA' long-term rating on the authority's parity debt. The outlook is stable. As of Sept. 1, 2011, the system had outstanding \$88.27 million in debt.

The ratings are based on our opinion of the general creditworthiness of the retail utility systems that participate in TRA's Denton Creek wastewater collection and treatment system. Contracts between the participant retail systems - primarily municipally-owned water and sewer systems mostly in Tarrant County - and the authority require unconditional payments to the authority. Payments, considered operating expenses of the participants, are based on the participants' sewer flows as a percentage of total flows to the plant. While there is no explicit language that requires a reallocation of expenses should a participant fail to pay, authority officials can recalculate participant obligations at any time under a broad range of circumstances, effectively creating a step-up provision.

The 11 contract participants are:

- Fort Worth (55.6% of fiscal 2011 flows; 'AA' revenue bond rating);
- Southlake (17%);
- Roanoke (16%);
- Westlake (3.2%);
- Keller (2.9%);
- Haslet (2.4%);
- Northlake (1.4%);
- Flower Mound (0.5%);
- Argyle (0.5%);
- Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 3 (0.5%); and
- Circle T Municipal Utility District No. 1 (less than 0.1%).

Bond proceeds will be used to refund for savings purposes the authority's parity series 2000 and 2003 revenue bonds. The loan from the Texas Water Development Board will be used to provide funds for collection and pumping system improvements.

A first-lien pledge on net revenues derived from contract participants' payments to the authority secures the loan. A debt service reserve fund in the amount of the average annual debt service requirement provides additional liquidity. TRA management is not reporting any cash flow or collection problems among any participant, either currently or historically.

Each participant benefits from the healthy Fort Worth metropolitan area economy. The largest participants' relatively built-out status, however, mitigates growth pressures. System treatment capacity is 11.5 million gallons per day (mgd), with projected peak flows reaching about 7 mgd by 2012. No capacity expansions are projected for at least several more years, although TRA plans to fund much of future capital requirements with additional debt, including about \$25 million in fiscal 2012, likely through additional TWDB loans.

The authority presents a proposed budget to the participants annually that includes the projected obligations of each. By practice, the authority reviews budget-to-actual performance at midyear and year-end. Any over- or under-collection is trued up at the end of the year, again by practice, although the authority's board retains the right to adjust rates whenever it deems necessary, for any cause. Because of this implied step-up provision and rates that are contractually set to the cost of service, we look past the financial performance for this system, given that debt service coverage is not likely to ever be meaningfully above 1x, and instead look to the general creditworthiness of the strongest participants. Collectively, the strongest participants demonstrate characteristics that include:

- A secure, long-term water supply with active efforts to further enhance and diversify the supply;
- Sound financial profiles of their respective utility systems, including strong liquidity and good capacity to support all on- and off-balance sheet obligations, including those to TRA; and
- A willingness to adjust retail rates as necessary, including a full pass-through of any rate adjustments implemented by TRA. For fiscal 2012, gross costs are budgeted to increase by 4.1%, to about \$3.59 per 1,000 gallons of flow.

Outlook

The stable outlook reflects the expectation that participant cities will continue to provide revenues that generate sufficient DSC, by way of passing through and fully recovering all TRA obligations.

Related Criteria And Research

USPF Criteria: Standard & Poor's Revises Criteria For Rating Water, Sewer, And Drainage Utility Revenue Bonds, Sept. 15, 2008

Ratings Detail (As Of 12-Sep-2011)		
Trinity River Auth (Denton Creek) WS		
Long Term Rating	AA/Stable	Affirmed
Trinity River Auth Denton Creek Regl Wastewtr treatment sys		
Unenhanced Rating	AA(SPUR)/Stable	Affirmed
Trinity River Auth (Denton Creek Regl Wastewtr Treatment)		
Unenhanced Rating	AA(SPUR)/Stable	Affirmed
Trinity River Auth (Denton Creek Regl Wstwtr Treatment Proj)		
Unenhanced Rating	AA(SPUR)/Stable	Affirmed
Many issues are enhanced by bond insurance.		

Copyright by Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC (S&P) a subsidiary of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this information may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of S&P. S&P, its affiliates, and/or their third party providers have exclusive proprietary rights in the information, including ratings, credit related analyses and data, provided herein.

This information shall not be used for any unlawful or unauthorized purposes. Neither S&P, nor its affiliates, nor their third party providers guarantee the accuracy, completeness, timeliness or availability of any information. S&P, its affiliates or their third party providers and their directors, officers, shareholders, employees or agents are not responsible for any errors or omissions or for the results obtained from the use of such information. S&P, ITS AFFILIATES AND THEIR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS DISCLAIM ANY AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE. In no event shall S&P, its affiliates or their third party providers and their directors, officers, shareholders, employees or agents be liable to any party for any direct, indirect, incidental, exemplary, compensatory, punitive, special or consequential damages, costs, expenses, legal fees, or losses (including, without limitation, lost income or lost profits and opportunity costs) in connection with any use of the information contained herein even if advised of the possibility of such damages.

The ratings and credit related analyses of S&P and its affiliates and the observations contained herein are statements of opinion as of the date they are expressed and not statements of fact or recommendations to purchase, hold, or sell any securities or make any investment decisions.

S&P assumes no obligation to update any information following publication. Users of the information contained herein should not rely on any of it in making any investment decision. S&P's opinions and analyses do not address the suitability of any security. S&P does not act as a "fiduciary" or an investment advisor. While S&P has obtained information from sources it believes to be reliable, S&P does not perform an audit and undertakes no duty of due diligence or independent verification of any information it receives. S&P keeps certain activities of its business units separate from each other in order to preserve the independence and objectivity of each of these activities.

As a result, certain business units of S&P may have information that is not available to other S&P business units. S&P has established policies and procedures to maintain the confidentiality of certain non-public information received in connection with each analytical process.

S&P's Ratings Services business may receive compensation for its ratings and credit related analyses, normally from issuers or underwriters of securities or from obligors. S&P reserves the right to disseminate its opinions and analyses. S&P's public ratings and analyses are made available on its Web sites, www.standardandpoors.com (free of charge) and www.ratingsdirect.com (subscription), and may be distributed through other means, including via S&P publications and third party redistributors. Additional information about our ratings fees is available at www.standardandpoors.com/usratingsfees.

Standard & Poor's uses billing and contact data collected from subscribers for billing and order fulfillment purposes, and occasionally to inform subscribers about products or services from Standard & Poor's, its affiliates, and reputable third parties that may be of interest to them. All subscriber billing and contact data collected is stored in a secure database in the U.S. and access is limited to authorized persons.

If you would prefer not to have your information used as outlined in this notice, if you wish to review your information for accuracy, or for more information on our privacy practices, please call us at (1) 212-438-7280 or write to us at privacy@standardandpoors.com. For more information about The McGraw-Hill Companies' Customer Privacy Policy please visit www.mcgraw-hill.com/privacy.html.

Permissions: To reprint, translate, or quote Standard & Poor's publications, contact: Client Services, 55 Water Street, New York, NY 10041, (1) 212-438-9823; or by email to: research_request@standardandpoors.com.

Standard & Poor's

TAB 13

PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT entered into as of September 15, 2011 (this "Agreement"), by and between Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer"), and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, National Association (the "Bank").

RECITALS

WHEREAS, the Issuer has duly authorized and provided for the issuance of its Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Securities"), such Securities to be issued in fully registered form only as to the payment of principal and interest thereon; and

WHEREAS, the Issuer has selected the Bank to serve as Paying Agent/Registrar in connection with the payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on said Securities and with respect to the registration, transfer, and exchange thereof by the registered owners thereof; and

WHEREAS, the Bank has agreed to serve in such capacities for and on behalf of the Issuer and has full power and authority to perform and serve as Paying Agent/Registrar for the Securities;

NOW, THEREFORE, it is mutually agreed as follows:

ARTICLE ONE

APPOINTMENT OF BANK AS PAYING AGENT AND REGISTRAR

Section 1.01. Appointment.

The Issuer hereby appoints the Bank to serve as Paying Agent with respect to the Securities. As Paying Agent for the Securities, the Bank shall be responsible for paying on behalf of the Issuer the principal, premium (if any), and interest on the Securities as the same become due and payable to the registered owners thereof, all in accordance with this Agreement and the "Order" (hereinafter defined).

The Issuer hereby appoints the Bank as Registrar with respect to the Securities. As Registrar for the Securities, the Bank shall keep and maintain for and on behalf of the Issuer books and records as to the ownership of said Securities and with respect to the transfer and exchange thereof as provided herein and in the "Order."

The Bank hereby accepts its appointment, and agrees to serve as the Paying Agent and Registrar for the Securities.

Section 1.02. Compensation.

As compensation for the Bank's services as Paying Agent/Registrar, the Issuer hereby agrees to pay the Bank the fees and amounts set forth in Schedule A attached hereto for the first year of this Agreement and thereafter the fees and amounts set forth in the Bank's current fee schedule then in effect for services as Paying Agent/Registrar for municipalities, which shall be supplied to the Issuer on or before 90 days prior to the close of the Fiscal Year of the Issuer, and shall be effective upon the first day of the following Fiscal Year.

In addition, the Issuer agrees to reimburse the Bank upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements, and advances incurred or made by the Bank in accordance with any of the provisions hereof (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel).

ARTICLE TWO DEFINITIONS

Section 2.01. Definitions.

For all purposes of this Agreement, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

"Acceleration Date" on any Security means the date on and after which the principal or any or all installments of interest, or both, are due and payable on any Security which has become accelerated pursuant to the terms of the Security.

"Bank Office" means the principal corporate trust office of the Bank as indicated on the signature page hereof. The Bank will notify the Issuer in writing of any change in location of the Bank Office.

"Financial Adviser" means First Southwest Company.

"Fiscal Year" means the fiscal year of the Issuer, ending August 31.

"Holder" and "Security Holder" each means the Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

"Issuer Request" and "Issuer Order" means a written request or order signed in the name of the Issuer by the President of the Board of Trustees of the Issuer, any one or more of said officials, delivered to the Bank.

"Legal Holiday" means a day on which the Bank is required or authorized to be closed.

"Order" means the order, ordinance, or resolution of the governing body of the Issuer pursuant to which the Securities are issued, certified by the Secretary of the Board of Trustees or any other officer of the Issuer and delivered to the Bank.

"Person" means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, joint stock company, trust, unincorporated organization, or government, or any agency or political subdivision of a government.

"Predecessor Securities" of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same obligation as that evidenced by such particular Security (and, for the purposes of this definition, any mutilated, lost, destroyed, or stolen Security for which a replacement Security has been registered and delivered in lieu thereof pursuant to Section 4.06 hereof and the Order).

"Record Date" means the last business day of the month next preceding payment.

"Redemption Date" when used with respect to any Bond to be redeemed means the date fixed for such redemption pursuant to the terms of the Order.

"Responsible Officer" when used with respect to the Bank means the Chairman or Vice-Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chairman or Vice-Chairman of the Executive Committee of the Board of Directors, the President, any Vice President, the Secretary, any Assistant Secretary, the Treasurer, any Assistant Treasurer, the Cashier, any Assistant Cashier, any Trust Officer or Assistant Trust Officer, or any other officer of the Bank customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

"Security Register" means a register maintained by the Bank on behalf of the Issuer providing for the registration and transfer of the Securities.

"Stated Maturity" means the date specified in the Order the principal of a Security is scheduled to be due and payable.

Section 2.02. Other Definitions.

The terms "Bank," "Issuer" and "Securities (Security)" have the meanings assigned to them in the recital paragraphs of this Agreement.

The term "Paying Agent/Registrar" refers to the Bank in the performance of the duties and functions of this Agreement.

ARTICLE THREE PAYING AGENT

Section 3.01. Duties of Paying Agent.

As Paying Agent, the Bank shall, provided adequate collected funds have been provided to it for such purpose by or on behalf of the Issuer, pay on behalf of the Issuer the principal of each Security at its Stated Maturity, Redemption Date, or Acceleration Date, to the Holder upon surrender of the Security to the Bank at the Bank Office.

As Paying Agent, the Bank shall, provided adequate collected funds have been provided to it for such purpose by or on behalf of the Issuer, pay on behalf of the Issuer the interest on each Security when due, by computing the amount of interest to be paid each Holder and preparing and sending checks by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, on each payment date, to the Holders of the Securities (or their Predecessor Securities) on the respective Record Date, to the address appearing on the Security Register or by such other method, acceptable to the Bank, requested in writing by the Holder at the Holder's risk and expense.

Section 3.02. Payment Dates.

The Issuer hereby instructs the Bank to pay the principal of and interest on the Securities on the dates specified in the Order.

Section 3.03. Reporting Requirements.

To the extent required by the Code or the Treasury Regulations, the Bank shall report to the Holders and the Internal Revenue Service the amount of interest paid or the amount treated as interest accrued on the Bonds which is required to be reported by the Holders on their returns of federal income tax.

ARTICLE FOUR REGISTRAR

Section 4.01. Security Register - Transfers and Exchanges.

The Bank agrees to keep and maintain for and on behalf of the Issuer at the Bank Office books and records (herein sometimes referred to as the "Security Register") and, if the Bank Office is located outside the State of Texas, a copy of such books and records shall be kept in the State of Texas, for recording the names and addresses of the Holders of the Securities, the transfer, exchange, and replacement of the Securities and the payment of the principal of and interest on the Securities to the Holders and containing such other information as may be reasonably required by the Issuer and subject to such reasonable regulations as the Issuer and the Bank may prescribe. All transfers, exchanges, and replacement of Securities shall be noted in the Security Register.

Every Security surrendered for transfer or exchange shall be duly endorsed or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer, the signature on which has been guaranteed by an officer of a federal or state bank or a member of the National Association of Securities Dealers, in form satisfactory to the Bank, duly executed by the Holder thereof or his agent duly authorized in writing.

The Bank may request any supporting documentation it feels necessary to effect a re-registration, transfer, or exchange of the Securities.

To the extent possible and under reasonable circumstances, the Bank agrees that, in relation to an exchange or transfer of Securities, the exchange or transfer by the Holders thereof will be completed and new Securities delivered to the Holder or the assignee of the Holder in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Securities to be cancelled in an exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the Holder, or his duly authorized agent, in form and manner satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar.

Section 4.02. Certificates.

The Issuer shall provide an adequate inventory of printed Securities to facilitate transfers or exchanges thereof. The Bank covenants that the inventory of printed Securities will be kept in safekeeping pending their use, and reasonable care will be exercised by the Bank in maintaining such Securities in safekeeping, which shall be not less than the care maintained by the Bank for debt securities of other political subdivisions or corporations for which it serves as registrar, or that is maintained for its own securities.

Section 4.03. Form of Security Register.

The Bank, as Registrar, will maintain the Security Register relating to the registration, payment, transfer and exchange of the Securities in accordance with the Bank's general practices and procedures in effect from time to time. The Bank shall not be obligated to maintain such Security Register in any form other than those which the Bank has currently available and currently utilizes at the time.

The Security Register may be maintained in written form or in any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time.

Section 4.04. List of Security Holders.

The Bank will provide the Issuer at any time requested by the Issuer, upon payment of the required fee, a copy of the information contained in the Security Register. The Issuer may also inspect the information contained in the Security Register at any time the Bank is customarily open for business, provided that reasonable time is allowed the Bank to provide an up-to-date listing or to convert the information into written form.

The Bank will not release or disclose the contents of the Security Register to any person other than to, or at the written request of, an authorized officer or employee of the Issuer, except upon receipt of a court order or as otherwise required by law. Upon receipt of a court order and prior to the release or disclosure of the contents of the Security Register, the Bank will notify the Issuer so that the Issuer may contest the court order or such release or disclosure of the contents of the Security Register.

Section 4.05. Cancellation of Certificates.

All certificates surrendered to the Bank, at the designated Payment/Transfer Office, for payment, redemption, transfer or replacement, shall be promptly cancelled by the Bank. The Bank will provide to the Issuer, at reasonable intervals determined by it, a certificate evidencing the destruction of cancelled certificates.

Section 4.06. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost, or Stolen Securities.

The Issuer hereby instructs the Bank, subject to the applicable provisions of the Order, to deliver and issue Securities in exchange for or in lieu of mutilated, destroyed, lost, or stolen Securities as long as the same does not result in an overissuance.

In case any Security shall be mutilated, or destroyed, lost, or stolen, the Bank, in its discretion, may execute and deliver a replacement Security of like form and tenor, and in the same denomination and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for such mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for such destroyed lost or stolen Security, only after (I) the filing by the Holder thereof with the Bank of evidence satisfactory to the Bank of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security, and of the authenticity of the ownership thereof and (ii) the furnishing to the Bank of indemnification in an amount satisfactory to hold the Issuer and the Bank harmless. All expenses and charges associated with such indemnity and with the preparation, execution and delivery of a replacement Security shall be borne by the Holder of the Security mutilated, or destroyed, lost or stolen.

Section 4.07. Transaction Information to Issuer.

The Bank will, within a reasonable time after receipt of written request from the Issuer, furnish the Issuer information as to the Securities it has paid pursuant to Section 3.01, Securities it has delivered upon the transfer or exchange of any Securities pursuant to Section 4.01, and Securities it has delivered in exchange for or in lieu of mutilated, destroyed, lost, or stolen Securities pursuant to Section 4.06.

**ARTICLE FIVE
THE BANK**

Section 5.01. Duties of Bank.

The Bank undertakes to perform the duties set forth herein and agrees to use reasonable care in the performance thereof.

The Bank is also authorized to transfer funds relating to the closing and initial delivery of the securities in the manner disclosed in the closing memorandum approved by the Issuer as prepared by the Issuer's financial advisor or other agent. The Bank may act on a facsimile or e-mail transmission of the closing memorandum acknowledged by the financial advisor or the Issuer as the final closing memorandum. The Bank shall not be liable for any losses, costs or expenses arising directly or indirectly from the Bank's reliance upon and compliance with such instructions.

Section 5.02. Reliance on Documents, Etc.

(a) The Bank may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and correctness of the opinions expressed therein, on certificates or opinions furnished to the Bank.

(b) The Bank shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it shall be proved that the Bank was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts.

© No provisions of this Agreement shall require the Bank to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability for performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity satisfactory to it against such risks or liability is not assured to it.

(d) The Bank may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, note, security, or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing statement, the Bank need not examine the ownership of any Securities, but is protected in acting upon receipt of Securities containing an endorsement or instruction of transfer or power of transfer executed in accordance with Section 4.01 hereof, which appears on its face to be signed by the Holder or an agent of the Holder. The Bank shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in a resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, note, security, or other paper or document supplied by Issuer.

(e) The Bank may consult with counsel, and the written advice of such counsel or any opinion of counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection with respect to any action taken, suffered, or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon.

(f) The Bank may exercise any of the powers hereunder and perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys of the Bank.

Section 5.03. Recitals of Issuer.

The recitals contained herein with respect to the Issuer and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Issuer, and the Bank assumes no responsibility for their correctness.

The Bank shall in no event be liable to the Issuer, any Holder or Holders of any Security, or any other Person for any amount due on any Security from its own funds.

Section 5.04. May Hold Securities.

The Bank, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and may otherwise deal with the Issuer with the same rights it would have if it were not the Paying Agent/Registrar, or any other agent.

Section 5.05. Moneys Held by Bank.

The Bank shall deposit any moneys received from the Issuer into a trust account to be held in a fiduciary capacity for the payment of the Securities, with such moneys in the account that exceed the deposit insurance available to the Issuer by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, to be fully collateralized with securities or obligations that are eligible under the laws of the State of Texas to secure and be pledged as collateral for trust accounts until the principal and interest on such securities have been presented for payment and paid to the owner thereof. Payments made from such trust account shall be made by check drawn on such trust account unless the owner of such Securities shall, at its own expense and risk, request such other medium of payment.

Subject to the Unclaimed Property Law of the State of Texas, any money deposited with the Bank for the payment of the principal, premium (if any), or interest on any Security and remaining unclaimed for three years after the final maturity of the Security has become due and payable will be paid by the Bank to the Issuer if the Issuer so elects, and the Holder of such Security shall hereafter look only to the Issuer for payment thereof, and all liability of the Bank with respect to such monies shall thereupon cease. If the Issuer does not elect, the Bank is directed to report and dispose of the funds in compliance with Title Six of the Texas Property Code, as amended.

Section 5.06. Indemnification.

To the extent permitted by law, the Issuer agrees to indemnify the Bank, its directors, officers, and employees, and hold it harmless against, any loss, liability, or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with its acceptance or administration of its duties hereunder, including the cost and expense against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties under this Agreement.

Section 5.07. Interpleader.

The Issuer and the Bank agree that the Bank may seek adjudication of any adverse claim, demand, or controversy over its person as well as funds on deposit, in either a Federal or State District Court located in the State and County where the administrative offices of the Issuer is located, and agree that service of process by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, to the address referred to in Section 6.03 of this Agreement shall constitute adequate service. The Issuer and the Bank further agree that the Bank has the right to file a Bill of Interpleader in any court of competent jurisdiction within the State of Texas to determine the rights of any Person claiming any interest herein.

Section 5.08. Depository Trust Company Services.

It is hereby represented and warranted that, in the event the Securities are otherwise qualified and accepted for "Depository Trust Company" services or equivalent depository trust services by other organizations, the Bank has the capability and, to the extent within its control, will comply with the "Operational Arrangements," effective August 1, 1987, which establishes requirements for securities to be eligible for such type depository trust services, including, but not limited to, requirements for the timeliness of payments and funds availability, transfer turnaround time, and notification of redemptions and calls.

**ARTICLE SIX
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

Section 6.01. Amendment.

This Agreement may be amended only by an agreement in writing signed by both of the parties hereto.

Section 6.02. Assignment.

This Agreement may not be assigned by either party without the prior written consent of the other.

Section 6.03. Notices.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver, or other document provided or permitted hereby to be given or furnished to the Issuer or the Bank shall be mailed or delivered to the Issuer or the Bank, respectively, at the addresses shown on the signature page of this Agreement.

Section 6.04. Effect of Headings.

The Article and Section headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 6.05. Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements herein by the Issuer and the Bank shall bind their respective successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 6.06. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation, or Succession.

Any corporation into which the Paying Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Paying Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Bank shall be the successor of the Paying Agent hereunder without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of either of the parties hereto, provided that the successor or resulting corporation is a bank, trust company, financial institution or other agency competent and legally qualified to act as Paying Agent/Registrar under this Agreement and the Order. The Paying Agent shall provide immediate notice to the Issuer of any such pending merger, conversion, consolidation or of any such pending transfer to a successor corporation.

Section 6.07. Severability.

In case any provision herein shall be invalid, illegal, or unenforceable, the validity, legality, and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 6.08. Benefits of Agreement.

Nothing herein, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy, or claim hereunder.

Section 6.09. Entire Agreement.

This Agreement and the Order constitute the entire agreement between the parties hereto relative to the Bank acting as Paying Agent/Registrar and if any conflict exists between this Agreement and the Order, the Order shall govern.

Section 6.10. Counterparts.

This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which shall constitute one and the same Agreement.

Section 6.11. Termination.

This Agreement will terminate (I) on the date of final payment of the principal of and interest on the Securities to the Holders thereof or (ii) may be earlier terminated by either party upon sixty (60) days written notice; provided, however, an early termination of this Agreement by either party shall not be effective until (a) a successor Paying Agent/Registrar has been appointed by the Issuer and such appointment accepted and (b) notice has been given to the Holders of the Securities of the appointment of a successor Paying Agent/Registrar. If the 60-day notice period expires and no successor has been appointed, the Bank, at the expense of the Issuer, has the right to petition a court of competent jurisdiction to appoint a successor under the Agreement. Furthermore, the Bank and Issuer mutually agree that the effective date of an early termination of this Agreement shall not occur at any time which would disrupt, delay or otherwise adversely affect the payment of the Securities.

Upon an early termination of this Agreement, the Bank agrees to promptly transfer and deliver the Security Register (or a copy thereof), together with other pertinent books and records relating to the Securities, to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar designated and appointed by the Issuer.

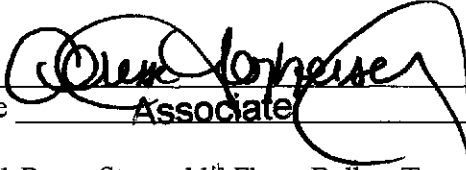
The provisions of Section 1.02 and of Article Five shall survive and remain in full force and effect following the termination of this Agreement.

Section 6.12. Governing Law.

This Agreement shall be construed in accordance with and governed by the laws of the State of Texas.


IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement as of the day and year first above written.

THE BANK OF NEW YORK MELLON TRUST COMPANY,
NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

By 
Title Associate

2001 Bryan Street, 11th Floor, Dallas, Texas 75201

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS

By 
General Manager

5300 S. Collins, Arlington, Texas 76018

SCHEDULE A

Paying Agent/Registrar Fee Schedule
[To be supplied by the Bank]



BNY MELLON
CORPORATE TRUST

Fee Schedule

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds Series 2011A

Acceptance Fee

None

A one-time charge covering the Bank Officer's review of governing documents, communication with members of the closing party, including representatives of the issuer, investment banker(s) and attorney(s), establishment of procedures and controls, set-up of trust accounts and tickler suspense items and the receipt and disbursement/investment of bond proceeds. This fee is payable on the closing date.

Annual Paying Agent Administration Fee

\$500

An annual charge covering the normal paying agent duties related to account administration and bondholder services. Our pricing is based on the assumption that the bonds are DTC-eligible/book-entry only. If the bonds are certificated or physical, then we will have to charge an additional \$1000 per year as a paying agent. This fee is payable annually, in advance.

Extraordinary Services/Misc Fees

At Appraisal

The charges for performing extraordinary or other services not contemplated at the time of the execution of the transaction or not specifically covered elsewhere in this schedule will be commensurate with the service to be provided and may be charged in BNY Mellon's sole discretion. If it is contemplated that the Trustee hold and/or value collateral or enter into any investment contract, forward purchase or similar or other agreement, additional acceptance, administration and counsel review fees will be applicable to the agreement governing such services. If the bonds are converted to certificated form, additional annual fees will be charged for any applicable tender agent and/or registrar/paying agent services. Additional information will be provided at such time. Should this transaction terminate prior to closing, all out-of-pocket expenses incurred, including legal fees, will be billed at cost. If all outstanding bonds of a series are defeased or called in full prior to their maturity, a termination fee may be assessed at that time.

These extraordinary services may include, but are not limited to, supplemental agreements, consent operations, unusual releases, tender processing, sinking fund redemptions, failed remarketing processing, the preparation of special or interim reports, custody of collateral, a one-time fee to be charged upon termination of an engagement. Counsel, accountants, special agents and others will be charged at the actual amount of fees and expenses billed, UCC filing fees, money market sweep fees, auditor confirmation fees, wire transfer fees, transaction fees to settle third-party trades and reconciliation fees to balance trust account balances to third-party investment provider statements

Annual fees include one standard audit confirmation per year without charge. Standard audit confirmations include the final maturity date, principal paid, principal outstanding, interest cycle, interest paid, cash and asset information, interest rate, and asset statement information. Non-standard audit confirmation requests may be assessed an additional fee. Periodic tenders, sinking fund, optional or extraordinary call redemptions will be assessed at \$300 per event. FDIC or other governmental charges will be passed along to you as incurred.



BNY MELLON
CORPORATE TRUST

Terms and Disclosures

Terms of Proposal

Final acceptance of the appointment under the Indenture is subject to approval of authorized officers of BNYM and full review and execution of all documentation related hereto. Please note that if this transaction does not close, you will be responsible for paying any expenses incurred, including Counsel Fees. We reserve the right to terminate this offer if we do not enter into final written documents within three months from the date this document is first transmitted to you. Fees may be subject to adjustment during the life of the engagement.

Customer Notice Required by the USA Patriot Act

To help the US government fight the funding of terrorism and money laundering activities, US Federal law requires all financial institutions to obtain, verify, and record information that identifies each person (whether an individual or organization) for which a relationship is established.

What this means to you: When you establish a relationship with BNYM, we will ask you to provide certain information (and documents) that will help us to identify you. We will ask for your organization's name, physical address, tax identification or other government registration number and other information that will help us to identify you. We may also ask for a Certificate of Incorporation or similar document or other pertinent identifying documentation for your type of organization.

We thank you for your assistance.

TAB 14

Cost of Issuance

	2009 IUP	2010 IUP	Total
Financial Advisory Fee.....	\$ 73,645.38	\$ 43,384.62	\$ 117,030.00
Financial Advisory Expenses.....	541.19	318.81	860.00
Bond Counsel.....	70,609.86	41,596.39	112,206.25
Bond Counsel Expenses.....	943.93	556.07	1,500.00
Attorney General.....	5,978.22	3,521.78	9,500.00
S&P.....	12,994.76	7,655.24	20,650.00
Paying Agent	2,831.79	1,668.21	4,500.00
Escrow Agent Fee.....	471.96	278.04	750.00
TRA Administrative Fee.....	176,846.21	104,180.39	281,026.60
Cusips.....	388.90	229.10	618.00
Miscellaneous.....	855.30	503.85	1,359.15
Total	\$ 346,107.50	\$ 203,892.50	\$ 550,000.00

TAB 15



ATTORNEY GENERAL OF TEXAS
GREG ABBOTT

September 29, 2011

EFK

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer") has submitted to me Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A (the "Bonds"), in the aggregate principal amount of \$37,765,000, for approval. The Bonds are dated September 15, 2011, numbered R-1 through R-25, and were authorized by Resolution No. R-1329 of the Issuer passed on August 24, 2011 (the "Resolution"). The record of proceedings submitted with the Bonds included the Resolution and a Certificate of General Manager relating to the Bonds.

I have examined the law and such certified proceedings and other papers as I deem necessary to render this opinion.

As to questions of fact material to my opinion, I have relied upon representations of the Issuer contained in the certified proceedings and other certifications of public officials furnished to me without undertaking to verify the same by independent investigation.

I express no opinion relating to the official statement or any other offering material relating to the Bonds.

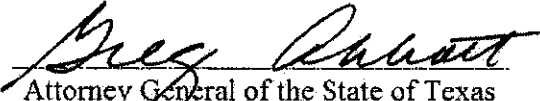
Based on my examination, I am of the opinion, as of the date hereof and under existing law, as follows (capitalized terms, except as herein defined, have the meanings given to them in the Resolution):

- (1) The Bonds have been issued in accordance with law and are valid and binding special obligations of the Issuer.
- (2) The Bonds are payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the Pledged Revenues derived from the various contracts between the Issuer and the Contracting Parties.
- (3) The Owner of the Bonds shall never have the right to demand payment of the Bonds, or the interest thereon, from any funds raised or to be raised by the levy of taxes by the Issuer.
- (4) The proceedings conform to the requirements of law.

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue
Bonds, Series 2011A - \$37,765,000

-Page 2-

Therefore, the Bonds are approved, and pursuant to chapter 1371 of the Government Code,
the proceedings are approved.



Attorney General of the State of Texas

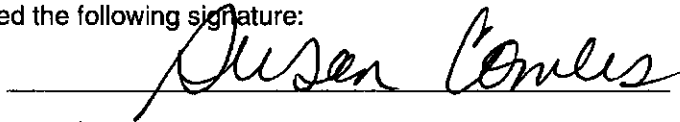
No. 52613
Book No. 2011-C
JCH

OFFICE OF COMPTROLLER
OF THE STATE OF TEXAS

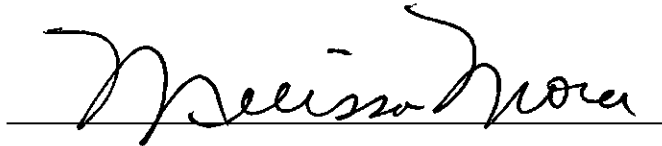
I, Melissa Mora, ☐ Bond Clerk ☒ Assistant Bond Clerk in the office of the Comptroller of the State of Texas, do hereby certify that, acting under the direction and authority of the Comptroller on the 29th day of September 2011, I signed the name of the Comptroller to the certificate of registration endorsed upon the:

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A and certain related documents. (the "Proceedings"),

the bonds are numbered R-1/R-25, dated September 15, 2011, and that in signing the certificate of registration I used the following signature:



IN WITNESS WHEREOF I have executed this certificate this the 29th day of September 2011.



I, Susan Combs, Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas, certify that the person who has signed the above certificate was duly designated and appointed by me under authority vested in me by Chapter 403, Subchapter H, Government Code, with authority to sign my name to all certificates of registration, and/or cancellation of bonds required by law to be registered and/or cancelled by me, and was acting as such on the date first mentioned in this certificate, and that the bonds/certificates described in this certificate have been duly registered in the office of the Comptroller, under Registration Number 79037.

GIVEN under my hand and seal of office at Austin, Texas, this the 29th day of September 2011.



SUSAN COMBS
Comptroller of Public Accounts
of the State of Texas

OFFICE OF COMPTROLLER

OF THE STATE OF TEXAS

I, SUSAN COMBS, Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas, do hereby certify that the attachment is a true and correct copy of the opinion of the Attorney General approving the:

Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A and certain related documents, (the "Proceedings")

the bonds are numbered R-1/R-25, of the denomination of \$ various, dated September 15, 2011, as authorized by issuer, interest various percent, under and by authority of which said bonds/certificates and Proceedings were registered electronically in the office of the Comptroller, on the 29th day of September 2011, under Registration Number 79037.

Given under my hand and seal of office, at Austin, Texas, the 29th day of September 2011.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Susan Combs", is positioned above the printed name and title.

SUSAN COMBS
Comptroller of Public Accounts
of the State of Texas

TAB 16

LAW OFFICES

MCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.

600 CONGRESS AVENUE
SUITE 1800
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78701-3248

TELEPHONE: 512 478-3805

FACSIMILE: 512 472-0871

717 NORTH HARWOOD
SUITE 900
DALLAS, TEXAS 75201-6587

TELEPHONE: 214 754-9200

FACSIMILE: 214 754-9250

700 N. ST. MARY'S STREET
SUITE 1525
SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS 78205-3503

TELEPHONE: 210 225-2800

FACSIMILE: 210 225-2984

August 25, 2011

Board of Directors
Trinity River Authority of Texas
P. O. Box 60
Arlington, Texas 76010

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS DENTON CREEK REGIONAL
WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2011A

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In our capacity as legal counsel for the Trinity River Authority of Texas (the "Issuer"), we have reviewed, amongst other documents, Resolution No. R-1329 captioned "Resolution Authorizing the Issuance, Sale, and Delivery of Trinity River Authority of Texas Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds and Approving and Authorizing Instruments and Procedures Relating Thereto," adopted by the Board of Directors of the Issuer on August 24, 2011 (the "Resolution"). Capitalized words and phrases used herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Resolution unless the context provides otherwise. Specifically, we have reviewed the provisions of the Resolution pertaining to the requirements for the issuance of Additional Bonds and the Contracts relating thereto.

Based upon our review of the Resolution and the Contracts, it is our opinion that, except as may be limited by laws applicable to the Issuer and the Contracting Parties and others relating to bankruptcy, reorganization and other similar matters affecting creditors' rights, there are Contracts now in effect pursuant to which the Contracting Parties and others which are parties to such Contracts are obligated to make payments to the Issuer during each fiscal year (including during periods when services of the System may not be available to such Contracting Parties and others) in such amounts as shall be necessary to provide to the Issuer Pledged Revenues sufficient to pay when due all principal of and interest on all Parity Bonds and Additional Bonds to be outstanding after the issuance of the captioned Additional Bonds, and to make the deposits into the Reserve Fund as required under the Resolution.

Respectfully,



TAB 17

LAW OFFICES

MCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.

600 CONGRESS AVENUE

SUITE 1800

AUSTIN, TEXAS 78701-3248

TELEPHONE: 512 478-3805

FACSIMILE: 512 472-0871

717 NORTH HARWOOD

SUITE 900

DALLAS, TEXAS 75201-6587

TELEPHONE: 214 754-9200

FACSIMILE: 214 754-9250

700 N. ST. MARY'S STREET

SUITE 1525

SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS 78205-3503

TELEPHONE: 210 225-2800

FACSIMILE: 210 225-2984

OCT 06 2011

TRINITY RIVER AUTHORITY OF TEXAS
DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM
REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2011A
DATED SEPTEMBER 15, 2011

AS BOND COUNSEL FOR THE ISSUER (the "Issuer") of the Bonds described above (the "Bonds"), we have examined into the legality and validity of the Bonds, which mature and bear interest from the dates specified in the text of the Bonds, until maturity or redemption, at the rates and payable on the dates as stated in the text of the Bonds, with the Bonds being subject to redemption prior to maturity, all as provided in the resolution of the Issuer authorizing the issuance of the Bonds, including the Certificate of General Manager authorized thereby (collectively, the "Bond Resolution").

WE HAVE EXAMINED the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, certified copies of the proceedings of the Issuer and other documents authorizing and relating to the issuance of said Bonds, including one of the executed Bonds (Bond Number R-1).

BASED ON SAID EXAMINATION, it is our opinion that the Bonds have been authorized, issued and duly delivered in accordance with law; and that except as may be limited by laws applicable to the Issuer relating to federal bankruptcy laws and any other similar laws affecting the rights of creditors of political subdivisions generally, which rights may be limited by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion, (i) the covenants and agreements in the Bond Resolution constitute valid and binding special obligations of the Issuer, which, together with other parity bonds, are secured by and payable from a first lien on and pledge of the "Pledged Revenues", as defined in the Bond Resolution, which include the "Net Revenues" of the Issuer's Denton Creek regional wastewater treatment "System", as defined in the Bond Resolution, and includes payments and amounts derived by the Issuer from various contracts styled "Trinity River Authority of Texas - Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Contract," between the Issuer and the Cities of Fort Worth, Haslet, Keller, Roanoke and Southlake, Texas, the Towns of Argyle, Flower Mound, Northlake and Westlake, Texas and Circle T Municipal Utility District Nos. 1 and 3 of Tarrant and Denton Counties, Texas and (ii) said contracts are authorized by law, have been duly executed, are valid, and are legally binding upon and enforceable by the parties thereto in accordance with their terms and provisions.

THE ISSUER has reserved the right, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution, to issue additional parity revenue bonds which also may be payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of, the aforesaid Pledged Revenues.

THE ISSUER also has reserved the right to amend the Bond Resolution with the approval of the owners of a majority of the principal amount of all outstanding bonds payable from and secured by a first lien on and pledge of the aforesaid Pledged Revenues, subject to the restrictions stated in the Bond Resolution.

THE REGISTERED OWNERS of the Bonds shall never have the right to demand payment of the principal thereof or interest thereon out of any funds raised or to be raised from taxes levied by the Issuer or from any source whatsoever other than specified in the Bond Resolution.

IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION, except as discussed below, that the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under the statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date of this opinion. We are further of the opinion that the Bonds are not "specified private activity bonds" and that, accordingly, interest on the Bonds will not be included as an individual or corporate alternative minimum tax preference item under Section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code"). In expressing the aforementioned opinions, we have relied on, and assume compliance by the Issuer with, certain covenants regarding the use and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and the use of the property financed therewith. We call your attention to the fact that if such representations are determined to be inaccurate or upon failure by the Issuer to comply with such covenants, interest on the Bonds may become includable in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds.

EXCEPT AS STATED ABOVE, we express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of acquiring, carrying, owning or disposing of the Bonds.

WE CALL YOUR ATTENTION TO THE FACT that the interest on tax-exempt obligations, such as the Bonds is included in a corporation's alternative minimum taxable income for purposes of determining the alternative minimum tax imposed on corporations by Section 55 of the Code.

WE EXPRESS NO OPINION as to any insurance policies issued with respect to the payments due for the principal of and interest on the Bonds, nor as to any such insurance policies issued in the future.

OUR SOLE ENGAGEMENT in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is as Bond Counsel for the Issuer, and, in that capacity, we have been engaged by the Issuer for the sole purpose of rendering an opinion with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, and with respect to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes, and for no other reason or purpose. The foregoing opinions represent our legal judgment based upon a review of existing legal authorities that we deem relevant to render such opinions and are not a guarantee of a result. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the Contracting Parties, or the adequacy of the Pledged Revenues to be derived from the Contract, and have not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the marketability of the Bonds and have relied solely on certificates executed by officials of the Issuer as to the current outstanding indebtedness of, and sufficiency of the Pledged Revenues.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of a result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (the "Service"). Rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above that we deem relevant to such opinions. The Service has an ongoing audit program to determine compliance with rules that relate to whether interest on state or local obligations is includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. No assurance can be given whether or not the Service will commence an audit of the Bonds. If an audit is commenced, in accordance with its current published procedures the Service is likely to treat the Issuer as the taxpayer. We observe that the Issuer has covenanted not to take any action, or omit to take any action within its control, that if taken or omitted, respectively, may result in the treatment of interest on the Bonds as includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

Respectfully,

Mr. Call, [Signature] + [Signature]

TAB 18

LAW OFFICES

McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.

600 CONGRESS AVENUE

SUITE 1800

AUSTIN, TEXAS 78701-3248

TELEPHONE: 512 478-3805

FACSIMILE: 512 472-0871

717 NORTH HARWOOD

SUITE 900

DALLAS, TEXAS 75201-6587

TELEPHONE: 214 754-9200

FACSIMILE: 214 754-9250

700 N. ST. MARY'S STREET

SUITE 1525

SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS 78205-3503

TELEPHONE: 210 225-2800

FACSIMILE: 210 225-2984

December 2, 2011

CERTIFIED MAIL RRR: 7008 3230 0001 0180 9558

Internal Revenue Service Center
Ogden, Utah 84201

Re: Information Reporting - Tax-Exempt Bonds
Trinity River Authority of Texas
Denton Creek Regional Wastewater Treatment System Revenue Bonds, Series 2011A

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 149(e) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, enclosed please find an original of Form 8038-G which is hereby submitted to you for the above-captioned bonds issued October 6, 2011.

Sincerely,

McCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P.



Harold T. Flanagan

HTF: ved

Enclosures

cc: Mr. G. Charles Kobdich

Information Return for Tax-Exempt Governmental Obligations

► Under Internal Revenue Code section 149(e)

► See separate instructions.

Caution: If the issue price is under \$100,000, use Form 8038-GC.

OMB No. 1545-0720

Part I Reporting Authority

If Amended Return, check here ☐

1 Issuer's name TRINITY RIVERY AUTHORITY OF TEXAS		2 Issuer's employer identification number (EIN) 75 : 6005084
3 Number and street (or P.O. box if mail is not delivered to street address) 5300 S. COLLINS	Room/suite	4 Report number (For IRS Use Only) 3
5 City, town, or post office, state, and ZIP code ARLINGTON, TEXAS 76018		6 Date of issue 10/06/2011
7 Name of issue DENTON CREEK REGIONAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT SYSTEM REVENUE BONDS, SERIES 2011A		8 CUSIP number 896564 SR3
9 Name and title of officer of the issuer or other person whom the IRS may call for more information FIONA ALLEN, NORTHERN REGION MANAGER		10 Telephone number of officer or other person (817) 439-5100

Part II Type of Issue (enter the issue price) See instructions and attach schedule

11 Education	11	
12 Health and hospital	12	
13 Transportation	13	
14 Public safety	14	
15 Environment (including sewage bonds)	15	
16 Housing	16	
17 Utilities	17	37,079,038
18 Other. Describe ►	18	
19 If obligations are TANs or RANs, check only box 19a <input type="checkbox"/>		
If obligations are BANs, check only box 19b <input type="checkbox"/>		
20 If obligations are in the form of a lease or installment sale, check box <input type="checkbox"/>		

Part III Description of Obligations. Complete for the entire issue for which this form is being filed.

	(a) Final maturity date	(b) Issue price	(c) Stated redemption price at maturity	(d) Weighted average maturity	(e) Yield
21	02/01/2038	\$ 37,079,038	\$ 37,765,000	15.08 years	3.0168 %

Part IV Uses of Proceeds of Bond Issue (including underwriters' discount)

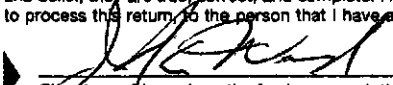

22 Proceeds used for accrued interest	22	-0-
23 Issue price of entire issue (enter amount from line 21, column (b))	23	37,079,038
24 Proceeds used for bond issuance costs (including underwriters' discount)	24	550,000
25 Proceeds used for credit enhancement	25	-0-
26 Proceeds allocated to reasonably required reserve or replacement fund	26	2,134,102
27 Proceeds used to currently refund prior issues	27	-0-
28 Proceeds used to advance refund prior issues	28	-0-
29 Total (add lines 24 through 28)	29	2,684,102
30 Nonrefunding proceeds of the issue (subtract line 29 from line 23 and enter amount here)	30	34,394,936

Part V Description of Refunded Bonds (Complete this part only for refunding bonds.) NOT APPLICABLE

31 Enter the remaining weighted average maturity of the bonds to be currently refunded	►	_____ years
32 Enter the remaining weighted average maturity of the bonds to be advance refunded	►	_____ years
33 Enter the last date on which the refunded bonds will be called (MM/DD/YYYY)	►	_____
34 Enter the date(s) the refunded bonds were issued ► (MM/DD/YYYY)		

Part VI Miscellaneous

35	Enter the amount of the state volume cap allocated to the issue under section 141(b)(5) . . .	35	-0-
36a	Enter the amount of gross proceeds invested or to be invested in a guaranteed investment contract (GIC) (see instructions)	36a	-0-
b	Enter the final maturity date of the GIC ▶ _____		
37	Pooled financings: a Proceeds of this issue that are to be used to make loans to other governmental units	37a	-0-
b	If this issue is a loan made from the proceeds of another tax-exempt issue, check box <input type="checkbox"/> and enter the name of the issuer ▶ _____ and the date of the issue ▶ N/A		
38	If the issuer has designated the issue under section 265(b)(3)(B)(i)(III) (small issuer exception), check box <input type="checkbox"/>		
39	If the issuer has elected to pay a penalty in lieu of arbitrage rebate, check box <input type="checkbox"/>		
40	If the issuer has identified a hedge, check box <input type="checkbox"/>		

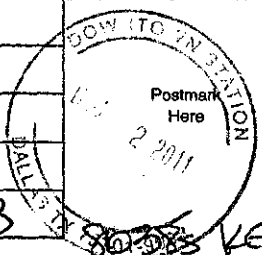
Signature and Consent	Under penalties of perjury, I declare that I have examined this return and accompanying schedules and statements, and to the best of my knowledge and belief, they are true, correct, and complete. I further declare that I consent to the IRS's disclosure of the issuer's return information, as necessary to process this return, to the person that I have authorized above.		
	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div>  Signature of issuer's authorized representative </div> <div> 10/06/2011 Date </div> <div> J. KEVIN WARD, GENERAL MANAGER Type or print name and title </div> </div>		
Paid Preparer's Use Only	Preparer's signature	Date	Preparer's SSN or PTIN
	 Firm's name (or yours if self-employed), address, and ZIP code	10/06/2011 Date	<input type="checkbox"/> Check if self-employed P01067358 Preparer's SSN or PTIN
	MCCALL, PARKHURST & HORTON L.L.P. 717 N. HARWOOD, SUITE 900, DALLAS, TX 75201		EIN 75 : 0799392 Phone no. (214) 754-9200

9556 0910 1000 0522 9002

U.S. Postal ServiceTM
CERTIFIED MAILTM RECEIPT
(Domestic Mail Only; No Insurance Coverage Provided)

For delivery information visit our website at www.usps.com

OFFICIAL USE

Postage	\$	
Certified Fee		
Return Receipt Fee (Endorsement Required)		
Restricted Delivery Fee (Endorsement Required)		
Total Postage & Fees	\$6.83	

Sent To	Internal Revenue Service Center
Street, Apt. No. or PO Box No.	Ogden, Utah 84201
City, State, ZIP+4	12 2-11

PS Form 3800, August 2006 See Reverse for Instructions